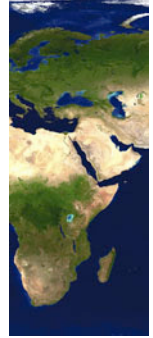




**International  
Association  
of Oil & Gas  
Producers**



**Surveying and Positioning  
Guidance Note Number 7, part 2**

**Coordinate Conversions and Transformations including Formulas**

**Revised - November 2009**

## *Index*

<b>Preface</b>	<b>4</b>
<b>Revision history</b>	<b>5</b>
<b>1 <u>MAP PROJECTIONS AND THEIR COORDINATE CONVERSION FORMULAS</u></b>	<b>8</b>
<b>1.1 INTRODUCTION</b>	<b>8</b>
<b>1.2 MAP PROJECTION PARAMETERS</b>	<b>9</b>
<b>1.3 MAP PROJECTION FORMULAS</b>	<b>20</b>
1.3.1 LAMBERT CONIC CONFORMAL	21
1.3.1.1 Lambert Conic Conformal (2SP)	21
1.3.1.2 Lambert Conic Conformal (1SP)	23
1.3.1.3 Lambert Conic Conformal (West Orientated)	24
1.3.1.4 Lambert Conic Conformal (2 SP Belgium)	24
1.3.1.5 Lambert Conic Near-Conformal	25
1.3.2 KROVAK OBLIQUE CONFORMAL CONIC	27
1.3.3 MERCATOR	30
1.3.3.1 Mercator (Spherical)	32
1.3.3.2 Popular Visualisation Pseudo Mercator	33
1.3.4 CASSINI-SOLDNER	35
1.3.4.1 Hyperbolic Cassini-Soldner	36
1.3.5 TRANSVERSE MERCATOR	37
1.3.5.1 General Case	37
1.3.5.2 Transverse Mercator Zoned Grid System	40
1.3.5.3 Transverse Mercator (South Orientated)	41
1.3.6 OBLIQUE MERCATOR AND HOTINE OBLIQUE MERCATOR	42
1.3.6.1 Laborde projection for Madagascar	47
1.3.7 STEREOGRAPHIC	49
1.3.7.1 Oblique and Equatorial Stereographic cases	50
1.3.7.2 Polar Stereographic	52
1.3.8 NEW ZEALAND MAP GRID	58
1.3.9 TUNISIA MINING GRID	59
1.3.10 AMERICAN POLYCONIC	60
1.3.11 LAMBERT AZIMUTHAL EQUAL AREA	61
1.3.11.1 Lambert Azimuthal Equal Area (Spherical)	63
1.3.12 LAMBERT CYLINDRICAL EQUAL AREA	63
1.3.12.1 Lambert Cylindrical Equal Area (Spherical)	63
1.3.13 ALBERS EQUAL AREA	63
1.3.14 EQUIDISTANT CYLINDRICAL	64
1.3.14.1 Equidistant Cylindrical (Spherical)	66
1.3.14.2 Pseudo Plate Carrée	67
1.3.15 BONNE	67
1.3.15.1 Bonne (South Orientated)	68
1.3.16 AZIMUTHAL EQUIDISTANT	68
1.3.16.1 Modified Azimuthal Equidistant	68
1.3.16.2 Guam Projection	70
1.3.17 PERSPECTIVES	71
1.3.17.1 Intoduction	71
1.3.17.2 Vertical Perspective	73
1.3.17.3 Vertical Perspective (orthographic case)	74
1.3.18 ORTHOGRAPHIC PROJECTION	75

<b>2</b>	<b><u>FORMULAS FOR COORDINATE OPERATIONS OTHER THAN MAP PROJECTIONS</u></b>	<b>78</b>
<b>2.1</b>	<b>INTRODUCTION</b>	<b>78</b>
<b>2.2</b>	<b>COORDINATE CONVERSIONS OTHER THAN MAP PROJECTIONS</b>	<b>79</b>
2.2.1	GEOGRAPHIC/GEOCENTRIC CONVERSIONS	79
2.2.2	GEOCENTRIC/TOPOCENTRIC CONVERSIONS	80
2.2.3	GEOGRAPHIC/TOPOCENTRIC CONVERSIONS	83
2.2.4	GEOGRAPHIC 3D TO 2D CONVERSIONS	85
<b>2.3</b>	<b>COORDINATE OPERATION METHODS THAT CAN BE CONVERSIONS OR TRANSFORMATIONS</b>	<b>86</b>
2.3.1	POLYNOMIAL TRANSFORMATIONS	86
2.3.1.1	General case	86
2.3.1.2	Polynomial transformation with complex numbers	91
2.3.1.3	Polynomial transformation for Spain	93
2.3.2	MISCELLANEOUS LINEAR COORDINATE OPERATIONS	94
2.3.2.1	Affine Parametric Transformation	94
2.3.2.2	Affine General Geometric Transformation	95
2.3.2.3	Similarity Transformation	98
2.3.2.4	UKOOA P6 Seismic Bin Grid Transformation	101
<b>2.4</b>	<b>COORDINATE TRANSFORMATIONS</b>	<b>105</b>
2.4.1	OFFSETS - GENERAL	105
2.4.1.1	Cartesian Grid Offsets from Form Function	105
2.4.2	TRANSFORMATIONS BETWEEN VERTICAL COORDINATE REFERENCE SYSTEMS	105
2.4.2.1	Vertical Offset	105
2.4.2.2	Vertical Offset by Interpolation of Gridded Data	106
2.4.2.3	Vertical Offset and Slope	107
2.4.3	TRANSFORMATIONS BETWEEN GEOCENTRIC COORDINATE REFERENCE SYSTEMS	108
2.4.3.1	Geocentric Translations (geocentric domain)	108
2.4.3.2	Helmert 7-parameter transformations	109
2.4.3.3	Molodensky-Badekas transformation (geocentric domain)	111
2.4.4	TRANSFORMATIONS BETWEEN GEOGRAPHIC COORDINATE REFERENCE SYSTEMS	112
2.4.4.1	Transformations using geocentric methods	112
2.4.4.2	Abridged Molodensky transformation	116
2.4.4.3	Geographic Offsets	117
2.4.4.4	Geographic Offset by Interpolation of Gridded Data	118
2.4.5	GEOID AND HEIGHT CORRECTION MODELS	119
2.4.5.1	Geographic3D to GravityRelatedHeight	119
2.4.5.2	Geographic3D to Geographic2D+GravityRelatedHeight	120
2.4.5.3	Geographic2D with Height Offsets	120

## **Preface**

The EPSG Geodetic Parameter Dataset, abbreviated to the **EPSG Dataset**, is a repository of parameters required to:

- define a *coordinate reference system* (CRS) which ensures that coordinates describe position unambiguously.
- define transformations and conversions that allow coordinates to be changed from one CRS to another CRS. Transformations and conversions are collectively called *coordinate operations*.

The EPSG Dataset is maintained by the OGP Surveying and Positioning Committee's Geodetic Subcommittee. It conforms to ISO 19111 – *Spatial referencing by coordinates*. It is distributed in three ways:

- the **EPSG Registry**, in full the *EPSG Geodetic Parameter Registry*, a web-based delivery platform in which the data is held in GML using the CRS entities described in ISO 19136.
- the **EPSG Database**, in full *the EPSG Geodetic Parameter Database*, a relational database structure where the entities which form the components of CRSs and coordinate operations are in separate tables, distributed as an MS Access database;
- in a relational data model as **SQL scripts** which enable a user to create an Oracle, MySQL, PostgreSQL or other relational database and populate that database with the EPSG Dataset;

OGP Surveying and Positioning Guidance Note 7 is a multi-part document for users of the EPSG Dataset.

- *Part 0, Quick Start Guide*, gives a basic overview of the Dataset and its use.
- *Part 1, Using the Dataset*, sets out detailed information about the Dataset and its content, maintenance and terms of use.
- *Part 2, Formulas*, (this document), provides a detailed explanation of formulas necessary for executing coordinate conversions and transformations using the coordinate operation methods supported in the EPSG dataset. Geodetic parameters in the Dataset are consistent with these formulas.
- *Part 3, Registry Developer Guide*, is primarily intended to assist computer application developers who wish to use the API of the Registry to query and retrieve entities and attributes from the dataset.
- *Part 4, Database Developer Guide*, is primarily intended to assist computer application developers who wish to use the Database or its relational data model to query and retrieve entities and attributes from the dataset.

The complete text may be found at <http://www.epsg.org/guides/index.html>. The terms of use of the dataset are also available at <http://www.epsg.org/CurrentDB.html>.

In addition to these documents, the Registry user interface contains online help and the Database user interface includes context-sensitive help accessed by left-clicking on any label.

This Part 2 of the multipart Guidance Note is primarily intended to assist computer application developers in using the coordinate operation methods supported by the EPSG Dataset. It may also be useful to other users of the data.

A **coordinate system** is a set of mathematical rules for specifying how coordinates are to be assigned to points. It includes the definition of the coordinate axes, the units to be used and the geometry of the axes. The coordinate system is unrelated to the Earth. A **coordinate reference system** (CRS) is a coordinate system related to the Earth through a **datum**. Colloquially the term coordinate system has historically been used to mean coordinate reference system.

Coordinates may be changed from one coordinate reference system to another through the application of a **coordinate operation**. Two types of coordinate operation may be distinguished:

- **coordinate conversion**, where no change of datum is involved and the parameters are chosen and thus error free.
- **coordinate transformation**, where the target CRS is based on a different datum to the source CRS. Transformation parameters are empirically determined and thus subject to measurement errors.

A projected coordinate reference system is the result of the application of a **map projection** to a geographic coordinate reference system. A map projection is a type of coordinate conversion. It uses an identified method with specific formulas and a set of parameters specific to that coordinate conversion method.

Map projection methods are described in section 1 below. Other coordinate conversions and transformations are described in section 2.

**Revision history:**

<u>Version</u>	<u>Date</u>	<u>Amendments</u>
1	December 1993	First release – POSC Epicentre
10	May 1998	Additionally issued as an EPSG guidance note.
11	November 1998	Polynomial for Spain and Tunisia Mining Grid methods added.
12	February 1999	Abridged Molodensky formulas corrected.
13	July 1999	Lambert Conic Near Conformal and American Polyconic methods added.
14	December 1999	Stereographic and Tunisia Mining Grid formulas corrected. Krovak method added.
15	June 2000	General Polynomial and Affine methods added
16	December 2000	Lambert Conformal (Belgium) remarks revised; Oblique Mercator methods consolidated and formulas added. Similarity Transformation reversibility remarks amended.
17	June 2001	Lambert Conformal, Mercator and Helmert formulas corrected.
18	August 2002	Revised to include ISO 19111 terminology. Section numbering revised. Added Preface. Lambert Conformal (West Orientated), Lambert Azimuthal Equal Area, Albers, Equidistant Cylindrical (Plate Carrée), TM zoned, Bonne, Molodensky-Badedas methods added. Errors in Transverse Mercator (South Orientated) formula corrected.
19	December 2002	Polynomial formulas amended. Formula for spherical radius in Equidistant Cylindrical projection amended. Formula for Krovak projection amended. Degree representation conversions added. Editorial amendments made to subscripts and superscripts.
20	May 2003	Font for Greek symbols in Albers section amended.
21	October 2003	Typographic errors in example for Lambert Conic (Belgium) corrected. Polar Stereographic formulae extended for secant variants. General polynomial extended to degree 13. Added Abridged Molodensky and Lambert Azimuthal Equal Area examples and Reversible polynomial formulae.
22	December 2003	Errors in FE and FN values in example for Lambert Azimuthal Equal Area corrected.
23	January 2004	Database codes for Polar Stereographic variants corrected. Degree representation conversions withdrawn.
24	October 2004  From this revision, published as part 2 of a two-part set.	Corrected equation for u in Oblique Mercator. Added Guam projection, Geographic 3D to 2D conversion, vertical offset and gradient method, geoid models, bilinear interpolation methods. Added tables giving projection parameter definitions. Amended Molodensky-Badekas method name and added example. Added section on reversibility to Helmert 7-parameter transformations. Transformation section 2 reordered. Section 3 (concatenated operations) added.
25	May 2005	Amended reverse formulas for Lambert Conic Near-Conformal. Corrected Lambert Azimuthal Equal Area formulae. Symbol for latitude of pseudo standard parallel parameter made consistent. Corrected Affine Orthogonal Geometric transformation reverse example. Added Modified Azimuthal Equidistant projection.
26	July 2005	Further correction to Lambert Azimuthal Equal Area formulae. Correction to Moldenski-Badekas example.
27	September 2005	Miscellaneous linear coordinate operations paragraphs re-written to include reversibility and UKOOA P6. Improved formula for r' in Lambert Conic Near-Conformal.
28	November 2005	Corrected error in formula for t and false grid coordinates of 2SP example in Mercator projection.
29	April 2006	Typographic errors corrected. (For oblique stereographic, corrected formula for w. For Lambert azimuthal equal area, changed example. For Albers equal area, corrected formulae for alpha. For modified azimuthal equidistant, corrected formula for c. For Krovak, corrected formula for theta', clarified formulae for tO and lat. For Cassini, in example corrected radian value of longitude of natural origin). References to EPSG updated.

30	June 2006	Added Hyperbolic Cassini-Soldner. Corrected FE and FN values in example for Modified Azimuthal Equidistant. Added note to Krovak. Amended Abridged Molodensky description, corrected example.
31	August 2006	Corrected sign of value for G in Modified Azimuthal Equidistant example.
32	February 2007	Descriptive text for Oblique Mercator amended; formula for Laborde projection for Madagascar added. Added polar aspect equations for Lambert Azimuthal Equal Area. Corrected example in polynomial transformation for Spain. For Lambert 1SP, corrected equation for r'.
33	March 2007	For Krovak example, corrected axis names.
34	July 2007	Note on longitude wrap-around added prior to preamble to map projection formulas, section 1.4. For Laborde, corrected formula for q'. For Albers Equal Area, corrected formulae for $\alpha$ and $\beta$ '.
35	April 2008	Longitude wrap-around note clarified. For Oblique Mercator, corrected symbol in formula for longitude. For Krovak, clarified defining parameters. Amended Vertical Offset description and formula. Added geographic/topocentric conversions, geocentric/topocentric conversions, Vertical Perspective, Orthographic, Lambert Cylindrical Equal Area, ellipsoidal development of Equidistant Cylindrical. Removed section on identification of map projection method.
36	July 2008	For Lambert Conic Near Conformal, corrected equations for $\varphi$ '.
37	August 2008	Corrected general polynomial example.
38	January 2009	For Mercator (1SP), clarified use of $\varphi_0$ . For Molodensky-Badekas, augmented example. Added Popular Visualisation Pseudo Mercator method, added formulas and examples for Mercator (Spherical) and formulas for American Polyconic.
39	April 2009	Preface revised to be consistent with other parts of GN7. For Lambert Azimuth Equal Area, in example corrected symbol for $\beta$ '. For Krovak, corrected formulas. For Equidistant Cylindrical (spherical) corrected formula for R; comments on R added to all spherical methods. For Equidistant Cylindrical updated formula to harmonise parameters and symbols with similar methods.
40	November 2009	For geographic/geocentric conversions, corrected equation for $\varphi$ . For Transverse Mercator (South Oriented), added example. Corrected equation for computation of radius of authalic sphere (optionally referenced by equal area methods developed on a sphere). Augmented description of geocentric methods to clearly discriminate the coordinate domain to which they are applied.

## **1 Map projections and their coordinate conversion formulas**

### **1.1 Introduction**

Setting aside the large number of map projection methods which may be employed for atlas maps, equally small scale illustrative exploration maps, and wall maps of the world or continental areas, the EPSG dataset provides reference parameter values for orthomorphic or conformal map projections which are used for medium or large scale topographic or exploration mapping. Here accurate positions are important and sometimes users may wish to scale accurate positions, distances or areas from the maps.

Small scale maps normally assume a spherical earth and the inaccuracies inherent in this assumption are of no consequence at the usual scale of these maps. For medium and large scale sheet maps, or maps and coordinates held digitally to a high accuracy, it is essential that due regard is paid to the actual shape of the Earth. Such coordinate reference systems are therefore invariably based on an ellipsoid and its derived map projections. The EPSG dataset and this supporting conversion documentation considers only map projections for the ellipsoid.

Though not exhaustive the following list of named map projection methods are those which are most frequently encountered for medium and large scale mapping, some of them much less frequently than others since they are designed to serve only one particular country. They are grouped according to their possession of similar properties, which will be explained later. Except where indicated all are conformal.

Mercator with one standard parallel with two standard parallels	Cylindrical
Cassini-Soldner (N.B. not conformal)	Transverse Cylindrical
Transverse Mercator Group Transverse Mercator (including south oriented version) Universal Transverse Mercator Gauss-Kruger Gauss-Boaga	Transverse Cylindrical
Oblique Mercator Group Hotine Oblique Mercator Oblique Mercator Laborde Oblique Mercator	Oblique Cylindrical
Lambert Conical Conformal with one standard parallel with two standard parallels	Conical
Stereographic Polar Oblique and equatorial	Azimuthal



## 1.2 Map Projection parameters

A map projection grid is related to the geographical graticule of an ellipsoid through the definition of a coordinate conversion method and a set of parameters appropriate to that method. Different conversion methods may require different parameters. Any one coordinate conversion method may take several different sets of associated parameter values, each set related to a particular map projection zone applying to a particular country or area of the world. Before setting out the formulas involving these parameters, which enable the coordinate conversions for the projection methods listed above, it is as well to understand the nature of the parameters.

The plane of the map and the ellipsoid surface may be assumed to have one particular point in common. This point is referred to as the **natural origin**. It is the point from which the values of both the geographic coordinates on the ellipsoid and the grid coordinates on the projection are deemed to increment or decrement for computational purposes. Alternatively it may be considered as the point which in the absence of application of false coordinates has grid coordinates of (0,0). For example, for projected coordinate reference systems using the Cassini-Soldner or Transverse Mercator methods, the natural origin is at the intersection of a chosen parallel and a chosen meridian (see Figure 2 at end of section). The chosen parallel will frequently but not necessarily be the equator. The chosen meridian will usually be central to the mapped area. For the stereographic projection the origin is at the centre of the projection where the plane of the map is imagined to be tangential to the ellipsoid.

Since the natural origin may be at or near the centre of the projection and under normal coordinate circumstances would thus give rise to negative coordinates over parts of the map, this origin is usually given false coordinates which are large enough to avoid this inconvenience. Hence each natural origin will normally have **False Easting, FE** and **False Northing, FN** values. For example, the false easting for the origins of all Universal Transverse Mercator zones is 500000m. As the UTM origin lies on the equator, areas north of the equator do not need and are not given a false northing but for mapping southern hemisphere areas the equator origin is given a false northing of 10,000,000m, thus ensuring that no point in the southern hemisphere will take a negative northing coordinate. Figure 4 illustrates the UTM arrangements.

These arrangements suggest that if there are false easting and false northing for the real or natural origin, there is also a **Grid Origin** which has coordinates (0,0). In general this point is of no consequence though its geographic position may be computed if needed. For example, for the WGS 84 / UTM zone 31N coordinate reference system which has a natural origin at 0°N, 3°E where false easting is 500000m E (and false northing is 0m N), the grid origin is at 0°N, 1°29'19.478"W. Sometimes however, rather than base the easting and northing coordinate reference system on the natural origin by giving it **FE** and **FN** values, it may be convenient to select a **False Origin** at a specific meridian/parallel intersection and attribute the false coordinates **Easting at False Origin, E<sub>F</sub>** and **Northing at False Origin, N<sub>F</sub>** to this. The related easting and northing of the natural origin may then be computed if required.

The natural origin will always lie on a meridian of longitude. Longitudes are most commonly expressed relative to the **Prime Meridian** of Greenwich but some countries, particularly in former times, have preferred to relate their longitudes to a prime meridian through their national astronomical observatory, usually sited in or near their capital city, e.g. Paris for France, Bogota for Colombia. The meridian of the projection zone origin is known as the **Longitude of Origin**. For certain projection types it is often termed the **Central Meridian** or abbreviated as **CM** and provides the direction of the northing axis of the projected coordinate reference system.

Because of the steadily increasing distortion in the scale of the map with increasing distance from the origin, central meridian or other line on which the scale is the nominal scale of the projection, it is usual to limit the extent of a projection to within a few degrees of latitude or longitude of this point or line. Thus, for example, a UTM or other Transverse Mercator projection zone will normally extend only 2 or 3 degrees from the central meridian. Beyond this area another **zone** of the projection, with a new origin and central meridian,

needs to be used or created. The UTM system has a specified 60 numbered zones, each 6 degrees wide, covering the ellipsoid between the 84 degree North and 80 degree South latitude parallels. Other Transverse Mercator projection zones may be constructed with different central meridians, and different origins chosen to suit the countries or states for which they are used. A number of these are included in the EPSG dataset. Similarly a Lambert Conic Conformal zone distorts most rapidly in the north-south direction and may, as in Texas, be divided into latitudinal bands.

In order to further limit the scale distortion within the coverage of the zone or projection area, some projections introduce a **scale factor** at the origin (on the central meridian for Transverse Mercator projections), which has the effect of reducing the nominal scale of the map here and making it have the nominal scale some distance away. For example in the case of the UTM and some other Transverse Mercator projections a scale factor of slightly less than unity is introduced on the central meridian thus making it unity on two meridians either side of the central one, and reducing its departure from unity beyond these. The scale factor is a required parameter whether or not it is unity and is usually symbolised as  $k_0$ .

Thus for projections in the Transverse Mercator group in section 1.1 above, the parameters which are required to completely and unambiguously define the projection method are:

- Latitude of natural origin
- Longitude of natural origin (the central meridian)
- Scale factor at natural origin (on the central meridian)
- False easting
- False northing

Since the UTM zones obey set rules, it is sufficient to state only the UTM zone number (or central meridian). The remaining parameters from the above list are defined by the rules.

It has been noted that the Transverse Mercator projection is employed for the topographical mapping of longitudinal bands of territories, limiting the amount of scale distortion by limiting the extent of the projection either side of the central meridian. Sometimes the shape, general trend and extent of some countries makes it preferable to apply a single zone of the same kind of projection but with its central line aligned with the trend of the territory concerned rather than with a meridian. So, instead of a meridian forming this true scale central line for one of the various forms of Transverse Mercator, or the equator forming the line for the Mercator, a line with a particular azimuth traversing the territory is chosen, and the same principles of construction are applied to derive what is now an Oblique Mercator. This projection is sometimes referred to as the Hotine Oblique Mercator after the British geodesist who set out its formulas for application to Malaysian Borneo (East Malaysia) and also West Malaysia. Laborde had previously developed the projection system for Madagascar, and Switzerland uses a similar system derived by Rosenmund.

More recently (1974) Lee has derived formulas for a minimum scale factor projection for New Zealand known as the New Zealand Map Grid. The line of minimum scale follows the general alignment of the two main islands. This resembles an Oblique Mercator projection in its effect, but is not strictly an Oblique Mercator. The additional mathematical complexity of the projection enables its derivation via an Oblique Stereographic projection, which is sometimes the way it is classified. Because of its unique formulation inclusion of the New Zealand Map Grid within international mapping software was sporadic; as a consequence New Zealand has reverted to the frequently-encountered Transverse Mercator for its most recent mapping.

The parameters required to define an Oblique Mercator projection are:

- Latitude of projection centre (the origin point on the initial line)
- Longitude of projection centre
- Azimuth of initial line [at the projection centre]
- Scale factor on initial line
- Angle from Rectified to Skewed grid

and then either

- False easting (easting at the projection natural origin)
- False northing (northing at the projection natural origin)

or

- Easting at projection centre
- Northing at projection centre

It is possible to define the azimuth of the initial line through the latitude and longitude of two widely spaced points along that line. This approach is not followed in the EPSG dataset.

For **Conical** map projections, which for the normal aspect may be considered as the projection of the ellipsoid onto an enveloping cone in contact with the ellipsoid along a parallel of latitude, the parallel of contact is known as a **standard parallel** and the scale is regarded as true along this parallel. Sometimes the cone is imagined to cut the ellipsoid with coincidence of the two surfaces along **two standard parallels**. All other parallels will be concentric with the chosen standard parallel or parallels but for the Lambert Conical Conformal will have varying separations to preserve the conformal property. All meridians will radiate with equal angular separations from the centre of the parallel circles but will be compressed from the 360 longitude degrees of the ellipsoid to a sector whose angular extent depends on the chosen standard parallel, - or both standard parallels if there are two. Of course the normal longitudinal extent of the projection will depend on the extent of the territory to be projected and will never approach 360 degrees.

As in the case of the Transverse Mercator above it is sometimes desirable to limit the maximum positive scale distortion for the one standard parallel case by distributing it more evenly over the extent of the mapped area. This may be achieved by introducing a scale factor on the standard parallel of slightly less than unity thus making it unity on two parallels either side of it. This achieves the same effect as choosing two specific standard parallels in the first place, on which the nominal scale will be preserved. The projection is then a Lambert Conical Conformal projection with two standard parallels. Although, strictly speaking, the scale on a standard parallel is always the nominal scale of the map and the scale factor on the one or two standard parallels should be unity, it is sometimes convenient to consider a Lambert Conical Conformal projection with one standard parallel yet which has a scale factor on the standard parallel of less than unity. This provision is allowed for in the EPSG dataset, where the single standard parallel is referred to as the **latitude of natural origin**. For an ellipsoidal projection the natural origin will fall slightly poleward of the mean of the latitudes of the two standard parallels.

A **longitude of origin** or **central meridian** will again be chosen to bisect the area of the map or, more usually, the total national map area for the country or state concerned. Where this cuts the one standard parallel will be the natural origin of the projected coordinate reference system and, as for the Transverse Mercator, it will be given a **False easting and False northing** to ensure that there are no negative coordinates within the projected area (see Figure 5). Where two standard parallels are specified a false origin may be chosen at the intersection of a specific parallel with the central meridian. This point will be given an **easting at false origin** and a **northing at false origin** to ensure that no negative coordinates will result. Figure 6 illustrates these arrangements.

It is clear that any number of Lambert projection zones may be formed according to which standard parallel or standard parallels are chosen and this is clearly exemplified by those which are used for many of the United States State Plane coordinate zones. They are normally chosen either, for one standard parallel, to approximately bisect the latitudinal extent of the country or area or, for two standard parallels, to embrace most of the latitudinal extent of the area. In the latter case the aim is to minimise the maximum scale distortion which will affect the mapped area and various formulas have been developed by different

mathematicians to select the appropriate standard parallels to achieve this. Kavraisky was one mathematician who derived a recipe for choosing the standard parallels to achieve minimal scale distortion. But however the selection of the standard parallels is made the same projection formulas apply. Thus the parameters needed to specify a projection in the Lambert projection will be as follows:

For a Lambert Conical Conformal with one standard parallel (1SP),  
Latitude of natural origin (the Standard Parallel)  
Longitude of natural origin (the Central Meridian)  
Scale factor at natural origin (on the Standard Parallel)  
False easting  
False northing

For a Lambert Conical Conformal with two standard parallels (2SP),  
Latitude of false origin  
Longitude of false origin (the Central Meridian)  
Latitude of first standard parallel  
Latitude of second standard parallel  
Easting at false origin  
Northing at false origin

where the order of the standard parallels is not material if using the formulas which follow.

The limiting case of the Lambert Conic Conformal having the apex of the cone at infinity produces a **cylindrical** projection, the Mercator. Here, for the single standard parallel case the latitude of natural origin is the equator. For the two standard parallel case the two parallels have equal latitude in the north and south hemispheres. In both one and two standard parallel cases, grid coordinates are for the natural origin at the intersection of the equator and the central meridian (see figure 1). Thus the parameters needed to specify a map projection using the Mercator map projection method will be:

For a Mercator with one standard parallel (1SP),  
Latitude of natural origin (always the Equator, documented only for completeness<sup>1</sup>)  
Longitude of natural origin (the Central Meridian)  
Scale factor at natural origin (on the Equator)  
False easting  
False northing

For a Mercator with two standard parallels (2SP),  
Latitude of first standard parallel<sup>2</sup>  
Longitude of natural origin (the Central Meridian)  
False easting (grid coordinate at the intersection of the CM with the equator)  
False northing

For **Azimuthal** map projections, which are only infrequently used for ellipsoidal topographic mapping purposes, the natural origin will be at the centre of the projection where the map plane is imagined to be tangential to the ellipsoid and which will lie at the centre of the area to be projected. The central meridian will pass through the natural origin. This point will be given a False Easting and False Northing.

120120\_\_\_\_\_

<sup>1</sup> In the formulas that follow, the latitude of natural origin is not used. However for completeness in CRS labeling the EPSG dataset includes this parameter, which must have a value of zero.

<sup>2</sup> In the formulas that follow the absolute value of the first standard parallel must be used.

The parameters needed to specify the Stereographic map projection method are:

- Latitude of natural origin
- Longitude of natural origin (the central meridian for the oblique case)
- Scale factor at natural origin
- False easting
- False northing

**TABLE 1.**  
**Parameters used in map projection conversions**

Parameter Name	Symbol	Description
Angle from Rectified to Skew Grid	$\gamma_C$	The angle at the natural origin of an oblique projection through which the natural coordinate reference system is rotated to make the projection north axis parallel with true north.
Azimuth of initial line	$\alpha_C$	The azimuthal direction (north zero, east of north being positive) of the great circle which is the centre line of an oblique projection. The azimuth is given at the projection center.
Central meridian		See Longitude of natural origin
Easting at false origin	$E_F$	The easting value assigned to the false origin.
Easting at projection centre	$E_C$	The easting value assigned to the projection centre.
False easting	FE	The value assigned to the abscissa (east or west) axis of the projection grid at the natural origin.
False northing	FN	The value assigned to the ordinate (north or south) axis of the projection grid at the natural origin.
False origin		A specific parallel/meridian intersection other than the natural origin to which the grid coordinates $E_F$ and $N_F$ , are assigned.
Grid origin		The point which has coordinates (0,0). It is offset from the natural origin by the false easting and false northing. In some projection methods it may alternatively be offset from the false origin by Easting at false origin and Northing at false origin. In general this point is of no consequence.
Initial line		The line on the surface of the earth model which forms the axis for the grid of an oblique projection.
Initial longitude	$\lambda_1$	The longitude of the western limit of the first zone of a Transverse Mercator zoned grid system.
Latitude of 1st standard parallel	$\varphi_1$	<u>For a conic projection with two standard parallels, this is the latitude of one of the parallels at which the cone intersects with the ellipsoid. It is normally but not necessarily that nearest to the pole. Scale is true along this parallel.</u>
Latitude of 2nd standard parallel	$\varphi_2$	For a conic projection with two standard parallels, this is the latitude of one of the parallels at which the cone intersects with the ellipsoid. It is normally but not necessarily that nearest to the equator. Scale is true along this parallel.
Latitude of false origin	$\varphi_F$	The latitude of the point which is not the natural origin and at which grid coordinate values easting at false origin and northing at false origin are defined.

Parameter Name	Symbol	Description
Latitude of natural origin	$\varphi_O$	The latitude of the point from which the values of both the geographic coordinates on the ellipsoid and the grid coordinates on the projection are deemed to increment or decrement for computational purposes. Alternatively it may be considered as the latitude of the point which in the absence of application of false coordinates has grid coordinates of (0,0).
Latitude of projection centre	$\varphi_C$	For an oblique projection, this is the latitude of the point at which the azimuth of the initial line is defined.
Latitude of pseudo standard parallel	$\varphi_P$	Latitude of the parallel on which the conic or cylindrical projection is based. This latitude is not geographic, but is defined on the conformal sphere AFTER its rotation to obtain the oblique aspect of the projection.
Latitude of standard parallel	$\varphi_F$	For polar aspect azimuthal projections, the parallel on which the scale factor is defined to be unity.
Longitude of false origin	$\lambda_F$	The longitude of the point which is not the natural origin and at which grid coordinate values easting at false origin and northing at false origin are defined.
Longitude of natural origin	$\lambda_O$	The longitude of the point from which the values of both the geographic coordinates on the ellipsoid and the grid coordinates on the projection are deemed to increment or decrement for computational purposes. Alternatively it may be considered as the longitude of the point which in the absence of application of false coordinates has grid coordinates of (0,0). Sometimes known as "central meridian (CM)".
Longitude of origin	$\lambda_O$	For polar aspect azimuthal projections, the meridian along which the northing axis increments and also across which parallels of latitude increment towards the north pole.
Longitude of projection centre	$\lambda_C$	For an oblique projection, this is the longitude of the point at which the azimuth of the initial line is defined.
Natural origin		The point from which the values of both the geographic coordinates on the ellipsoid and the grid coordinates on the projection are deemed to increment or decrement for computational purposes. Alternatively it may be considered as the point which in the absence of application of false coordinates has grid coordinates of (0,0). For example, for projected coordinate reference systems using the Transverse Mercator method, the natural origin is at the intersection of a chosen parallel and a chosen central meridian.
Northing at false origin	$N_F$	The northing value assigned to the false origin.
Northing at projection centre	$N_C$	The northing value assigned to the projection centre.
Origin		See natural origin, false origin and grid origin.
Projection centre		On an oblique cylindrical or conical projection, the point at which the direction of the cylinder or cone and false coordinates are defined.
Scale factor at natural origin	$k_O$	The factor by which the map grid is reduced or enlarged during the projection process, defined by its value at the natural origin.
Scale factor on initial line	$k_C$	The factor by which an oblique projection's map grid is reduced or enlarged during the projection process, defined by its value along the centre line of the cylinder or cone.
Scale factor on pseudo standard parallel	$k_P$	The factor by which the map grid is reduced or enlarged during the projection process, defined by its value at the pseudo-standard parallel.

Parameter Name	Symbol	Description
Zone width	W	The longitude width of a zone of a Transverse Mercator zoned grid system.

TABLE 2

**Summary of Coordinate Operation Parameters required for some Map Projections**

<u>Coordinate Operation Parameter Name</u>	<u>Coordinate Operation Method</u>								
	Mercator (1SP)	Mercator (2SP)	Cassini-Soldner	Transverse Mercator	Hotine Oblique Mercator	Oblique Mercator	Lambert Conical (1 SP)	Lambert Conical (2 SP)	Oblique Stereographic
Latitude of false origin								1	
Longitude of false origin								2	
Latitude of 1st standard parallel		1						3	
Latitude of 2nd standard parallel								4	
Easting at false origin								5	
Northing at false origin								6	
Latitude of projection centre					1	1			
Longitude of projection centre					2	2			
Scale factor on initial line					3	3			
Azimuth of initial line					4	4			
Angle from Rectified to Skewed grid					5	5			
Easting at projection centre						6			
Northing at projection centre						7			
Latitude of natural origin	1 =equator		1	1			1		1
Longitude of natural origin	2	2	2	2			2		2
Scale factor at natural origin	3			3			3		3
False easting	4	3	3	4	6		4		4
False northing	5	4	4	5	7		5		5

TABLE 3  
**Ellipsoid parameters used in conversions and transformations**

In the formulas in this Guidance Note the basic ellipsoidal parameters are represented by symbols and derived as follows:

<b>Primary ellipsoid parameters</b>		
<u>Parameter Name</u>	<u>Symbol</u>	<u>Description</u>
semi-major axis	a	Length of the semi-major axis of the ellipsoid, the radius of the equator.
semi-minor axis	b	Length of the semi-minor axis of the ellipsoid, the distance along the ellipsoid axis between equator and pole.
inverse flattening	1/f	= a/(a - b)
<b>Derived ellipsoid parameters</b>		
<u>Parameter Name</u>	<u>Symbol</u>	<u>Description</u>
flattening	f	= 1 / (1/f)
eccentricity	e	= $\sqrt{2f - f^2}$
second eccentricity	e'	= $\sqrt{e^2 / (1 - e^2)}$
radius of curvature in the meridian	$\rho$	radius of curvature of the ellipsoid in the plane of the meridian at latitude $\varphi$ , where $\rho = a(1 - e^2)/(1 - e^2 \sin^2 \varphi)^{3/2}$
radius of curvature in the prime vertical	$\nu$	radius of curvature of the ellipsoid perpendicular to the meridian at latitude $\varphi$ , where $\nu = a / (1 - e^2 \sin^2 \varphi)^{1/2}$
radius of authalic sphere	$R_A$	radius of sphere having same surface area as ellipsoid. $R_A = a * [(1 - \{(1 - e^2) / (2e)\}) * \{LN[(1 - e) / (1 + e)]\}] * 0.5]^{0.5}$
radius of conformal sphere	$R_C$	= $\sqrt{\rho \nu} = [a \sqrt{(1 - e^2) / (1 - e^2 \sin^2 \varphi)}$ This is a function of latitude and therefore not constant. When used for spherical projections the use of $\varphi_0$ (or $\varphi_1$ as relevant to method) for $\varphi$ is suggested, except if the projection is equal area when $R_A$ (see above) should be used.



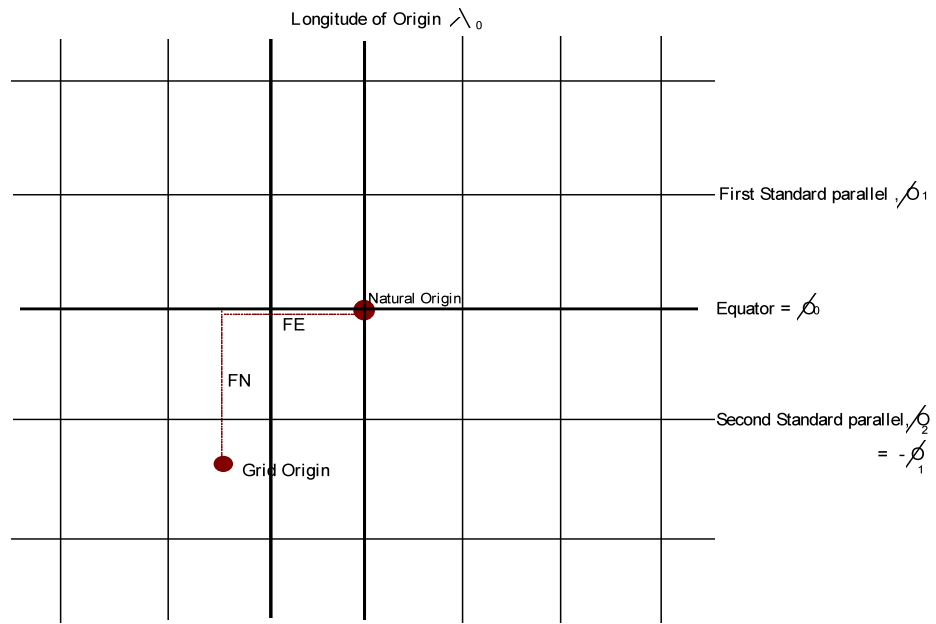


Figure 1. Key Diagram for Mercator Projection arrangements  
 (One and two standard parallel cases)

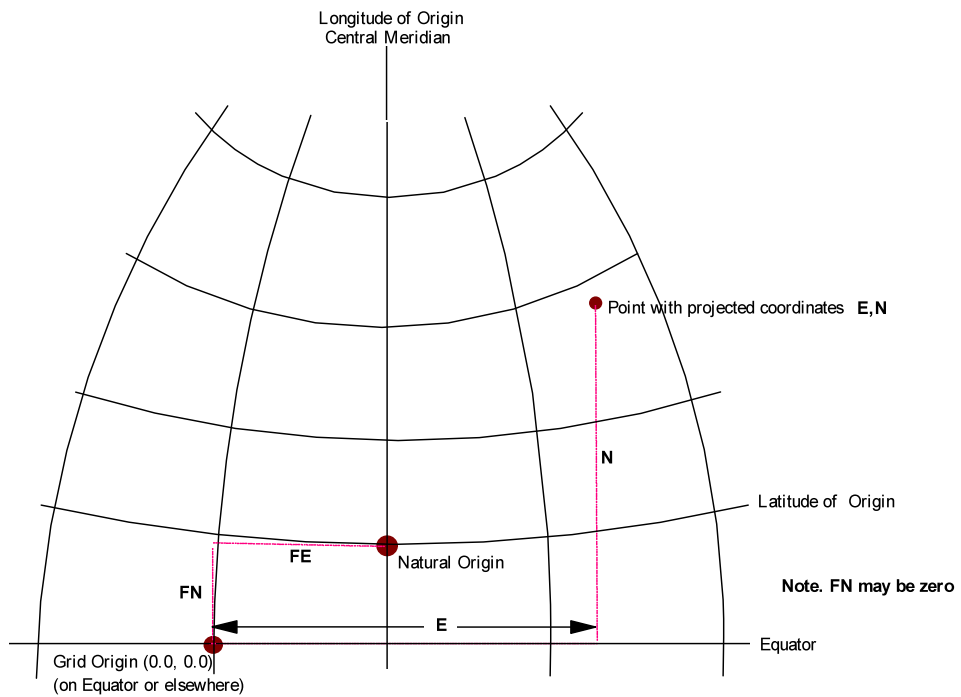


Figure 2. Key Diagram for Transverse Mercator Projection arrangements (N. Hemisphere)

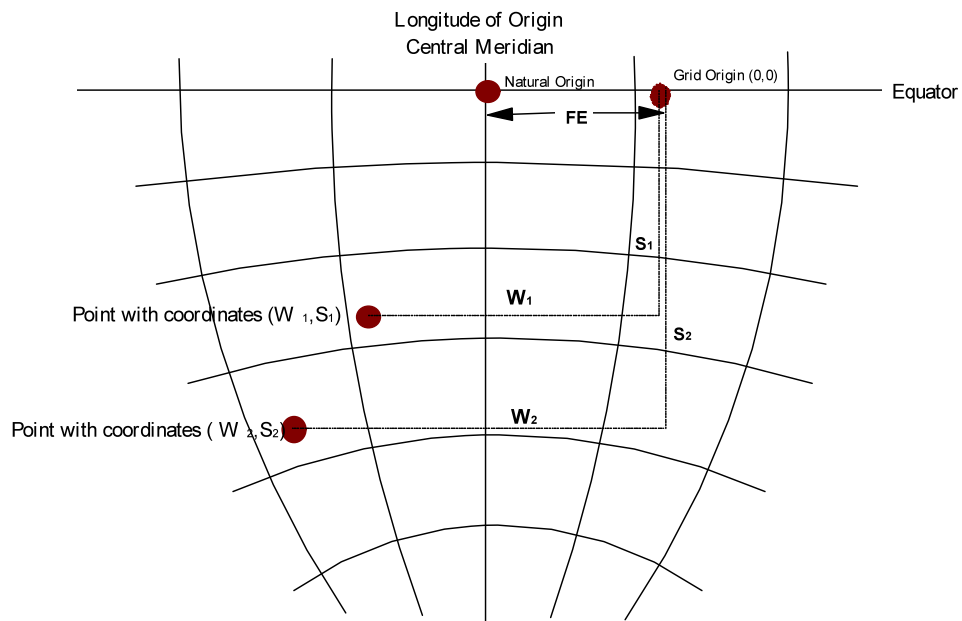


Figure 3. Key Diagram for South oriented Transverse Mercator Projection arrangements

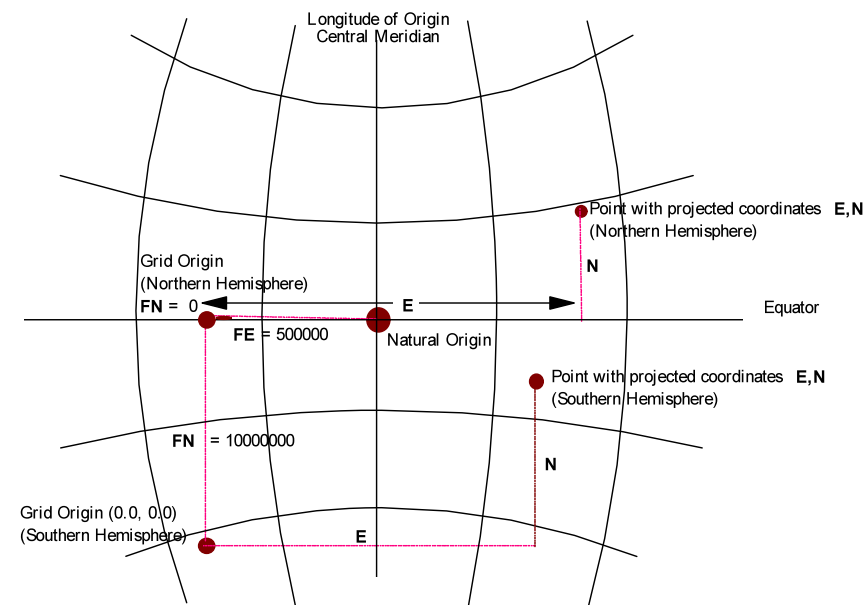


Figure 4. Key Diagram for Universal Transverse Mercator Projection arrangements (N and S hemisphere cases)

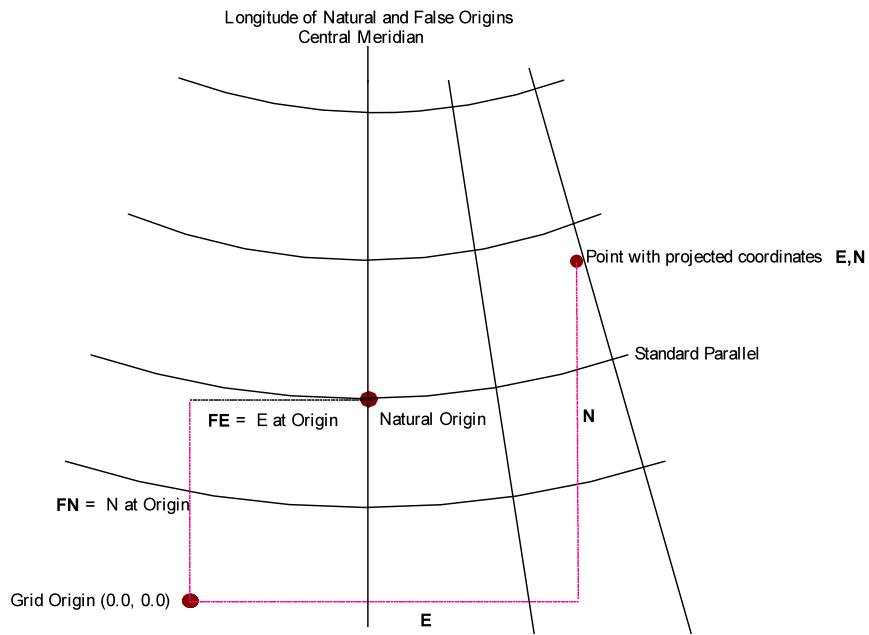


Figure 5. Key Diagram for Lambert Conical Conformal Projection with one standard parallel

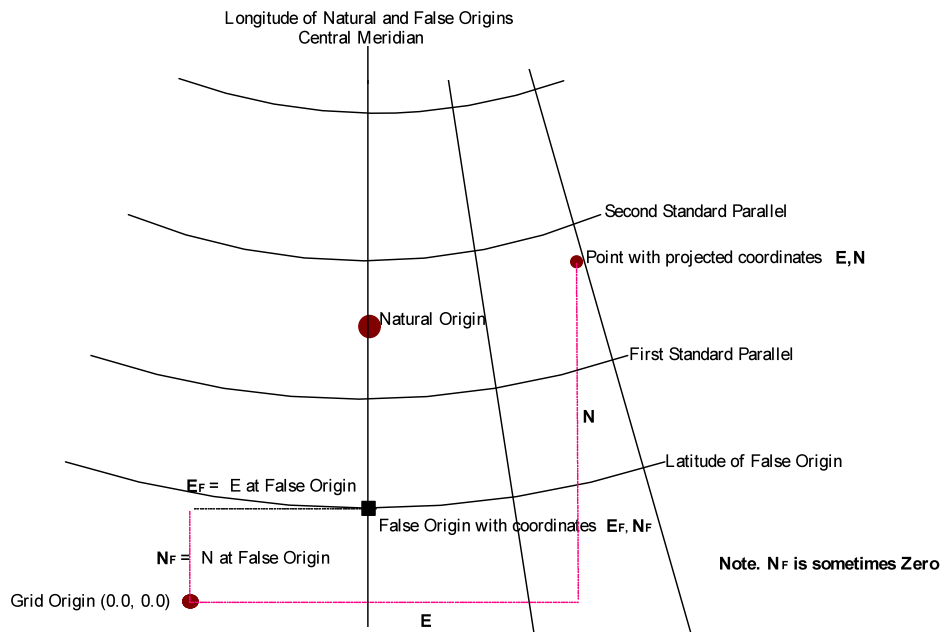


Figure 6. Key Diagram for Lambert Conical Conformal Projection with two standard parallels

### 1.3 Map Projection formulas

In general, only formulas for computation on the ellipsoid are considered. Projection formulas for the spherical earth are simpler but the spherical figure is inadequate to represent positional data with great accuracy at large map scales for the real earth. Projections of the sphere are only suitable for illustrative maps at scale of 1:1 million or less where precise positional definition is not critical.

The formulas which follow are largely adapted from "Map Projections - A Working Manual" by J.P.Snyder, published by the U.S. Geological Survey as Professional Paper No.1395<sup>3</sup>. As well as providing an extensive overview of most map projections in current general use, and the formulas for their construction for both the spherical and ellipsoidal earth, this excellent publication provides computational hints and details of the accuracies attainable by the formulas. It is strongly recommended that all those who have to deal with map projections for medium and large scale mapping should follow its guidance.

There are a number of different formulas available in the literature for map projections other than those quoted by Snyder. Some are closed formulas; others, for ease of calculation, may depend on series expansions and their precision will generally depend on the number of terms used for computation. Generally those formulas which follow in this chapter will provide results which are accurate to within a decimetre, which is normally adequate for exploration mapping purposes. Coordinate expression and computations for engineering operations are usually consistently performed in grid terms.

The importance of one further variable should be noted. This is the unit of linear measurement used in the definition of projected coordinate reference systems. For metric map projections the unit of measurement is restricted to this unit. For non-metric map projections the metric ellipsoid semi-major axis needs to be converted to the projected coordinate reference system linear unit before use in the formulas below. The relevant ellipsoid is obtained through the datum part of the projected coordinate reference system.

#### Reversibility

Different formulas are required for forward and reverse map projection conversions: the forward formula cannot be used for the reverse conversion. However both forward and reverse formulas are explicitly given in the sections below as parts of a single conversion method. As such, map projection methods are described in the EPSG dataset as being reversible. Forward and reverse formulas for each conversion method use the projection parameters appropriate to that method with parameter values unchanged.

#### Longitude 'wrap-around'

The formulas that follow assume longitudes are described using the range  $-180 \leq \lambda \leq +180$  degrees. If the area of interest crosses the  $180^\circ$  meridian and an alternative longitude range convention is being used, longitudes need to be converted to fall into this  $-180 \leq \lambda \leq +180$  degrees range. This may be achieved by applying the following:

If  $(\lambda - \lambda_0) \leq -180^\circ$  then  $\lambda = \lambda + 360^\circ$ . This may be required when  $\lambda_0 > 0^\circ$ .

If  $(\lambda - \lambda_0) \geq 180^\circ$  then  $\lambda = \lambda - 360^\circ$ . This may be required when  $\lambda_0 < 0^\circ$ .

In the formulas that follow the symbol  $\lambda_C$  or  $\lambda_F$  may be used rather than  $\lambda_0$ , but the same principle applies.

120120\_\_\_\_\_

<sup>3</sup> This was originally published with the title "Map Projections Used by the US Geological Survey". In some cases the formulas given are insufficient for global use. In these cases EPSG has modified the formulas. Note that the origin of most map projections is given false coordinates (FE and FN or E<sub>F</sub> and N<sub>F</sub> or E<sub>C</sub> and N<sub>C</sub>) to avoid negative coordinates. In the EPSG formulas these values are included where appropriate so that the projected coordinates of points result directly from the quoted formulas.

### 1.3.1 Lambert Conic Conformal

For territories with limited latitudinal extent but wide longitudinal width it may sometimes be preferred to use a single projection rather than several bands or zones of a Transverse Mercator. The Lambert Conic Conformal may often be adopted in these circumstances. But if the latitudinal extent is also large there may still be a need to use two or more zones if the scale distortion at the extremities of the one zone becomes too large to be tolerable.

Conical projections with one standard parallel are normally considered to maintain the nominal map scale along the parallel of latitude which is the line of contact between the imagined cone and the ellipsoid. For a one standard parallel Lambert the natural origin of the projected coordinate system is the intersection of the standard parallel with the longitude of origin (central meridian). See Figure 5 at end of section 1.3. To maintain the conformal property the spacing of the parallels is variable and increases with increasing distance from the standard parallel, while the meridians are all straight lines radiating from a point on the prolongation of the ellipsoid's minor axis.

Sometimes however, although a one standard parallel Lambert is normally considered to have unity scale factor on the standard parallel, a scale factor of slightly less than unity is introduced on this parallel. This is a regular feature of the mapping of some former French territories and has the effect of making the scale factor unity on two other parallels either side of the standard parallel. The projection thus, strictly speaking, becomes a Lambert Conic Conformal projection with **two** standard parallels. From the one standard parallel and its scale factor it is possible to derive the equivalent two standard parallels and then treat the projection as a two standard parallel Lambert conical conformal, but this procedure is seldom adopted. Since the two parallels obtained in this way will generally not have integer values of degrees or degrees minutes and seconds it is instead usually preferred to select two specific parallels on which the scale factor is to be unity, as for several State Plane Coordinate systems in the United States.

The choice of the two standard parallels will usually be made according to the latitudinal extent of the area which it is wished to map, the parallels usually being chosen so that they each lie a proportion inboard of the north and south margins of the mapped area. Various schemes and formulas have been developed to make this selection such that the maximum scale distortion within the mapped area is minimised, e.g. Kavraisky in 1934, but whatever two standard parallels are adopted the formulas are the same.

#### 1.3.1.1 Lambert Conic Conformal (2SP)

(EPSG dataset coordinate operation method code 9802)

To derive the projected Easting and Northing coordinates of a point with geographic coordinates ( $\varphi, \lambda$ ) the formulas for the Lambert Conic Conformal **two standard parallel case** (EPSG dataset coordinate operation method code 9802) are:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Easting, } E &= E_F + r \sin \theta \\ \text{Northing, } N &= N_F + r_F - r \cos \theta \end{aligned}$$

where  $m = \cos\varphi / (1 - e^2 \sin^2\varphi)^{0.5}$  for  $m_1, \varphi_1$ , and  $m_2, \varphi_2$  where  $\varphi_1$  and  $\varphi_2$  are the latitudes of the standard parallels  
 $t = \tan(\pi/4 - \varphi/2) / [(1 - e \sin\varphi) / (1 + e \sin\varphi)]^{e/2}$  for  $t_1, t_2, t_F$  and  $t$  using  $\varphi_1, \varphi_2, \varphi_F$  and  $\varphi$  respectively

$$n = (\ln m_1 - \ln m_2) / (\ln t_1 - \ln t_2)$$

$$F = m_1 / (n t_1^n)$$

$$r = a F t^n \quad \text{for } r_F \text{ and } r, \text{ where } r_F \text{ is the radius of the parallel of latitude of the false origin}$$

$$\theta = n(\lambda - \lambda_F)$$

The reverse formulas to derive the latitude and longitude of a point from its Easting and Northing values are:

$$\varphi = \pi/2 - 2 \operatorname{atan} \left\{ t' \left[ \frac{1 - \operatorname{esin} \varphi}{1 + \operatorname{esin} \varphi} \right]^{e/2} \right\}$$

$$\lambda = \theta'/n + \lambda_F$$

where

$$r' = \pm \left\{ (E - E_F)^2 + [r_F - (N - N_F)]^2 \right\}^{0.5}, \text{ taking the sign of } n$$

$$t' = (r' / (aF))^{1/n}$$

$$\theta' = \operatorname{atan} \left[ (E - E_F) / (r_F - (N - N_F)) \right]$$

and  $n$ ,  $F$ , and  $r_F$  are derived as for the forward calculation.

Note that the formula for  $\varphi$  requires iteration. First calculate  $t'$  and then a trial value for  $\varphi$  using  $\varphi = \pi/2 - 2 \operatorname{atan} t'$ . Then use the full equation for  $\varphi$  substituting the trial value into the right hand side of the equation. Thus derive a new value for  $\varphi$ . Iterate the process until  $\varphi$  does not change significantly. The solution should quickly converge, in 3 or 4 iterations.

**Example:**

For Projected Coordinate Reference System: NAD27 / Texas South Central

Parameters:

Ellipsoid:	Clarke 1866	$a = 6378206.400$ metres	=	20925832.16 US survey feet
		$1/f = 294.97870$		
	then	$e = 0.08227185$		$e^2 = 0.00676866$
Latitude of false origin	$\varphi_F$	27°50'00"N	=	0.48578331 rad
Longitude of false origin	$\lambda_F$	99°00'00"W	=	-1.72787596 rad
Latitude of 1st standard parallel	$\varphi_1$	28°23'00"N	=	0.49538262 rad
Latitude of 2nd standard parallel	$\varphi_2$	30°17'00"N	=	0.52854388 rad
Easting at false origin	$E_F$	2000000.00		US survey feet
Northing at false origin	$N_F$	0.00		US survey feet

Forward calculation for:

Latitude	$\varphi$	=	28°30'00.00"N	=	0.49741884 rad
Longitude	$\lambda$	=	96°00'00.00"W	=	-1.67551608 rad

first gives :

$m_1$	=	0.88046050	$m_2$	=	0.86428642
$t$	=	0.59686306	$t_F$	=	0.60475101
$t_1$	=	0.59823957	$t_2$	=	0.57602212
$n$	=	0.48991263	$F$	=	2.31154807
$r$	=	37565039.86	$r_F$	=	37807441.20
$\theta$	=	0.02565177			

Then	Easting	$E$	=	2963503.91 US survey feet
	Northing	$N$	=	254759.80 US survey feet

Reverse calculation for same easting and northing first gives:

$\theta'$	=	0.025651765
$t'$	=	0.59686306
$r'$	=	37565039.86

Then	Latitude	$\varphi$	=	28°30'00.000"N
	Longitude	$\lambda$	=	96°00'00.000"W

**1.3.1.2 Lambert Conic Conformal (1SP)**  
 (EPSG dataset coordinate operation method code 9801)

The formulas for the two standard parallel can be used for the Lambert Conic Conformal single standard parallel case (EPSG dataset coordinate operation method code 9801) with minor modifications. Then

$$E = FE + r \sin\theta$$

$$N = FN + r_0 - r \cos\theta, \text{ using the natural origin rather than the false origin.}$$

where

$$n = \sin \varphi_0$$

$$r = a F t^n k_0 \quad \text{for } r_0, \text{ and } r$$

$t$  is found for  $t_0, \varphi_0$  and  $t, \varphi$  and  $m, F$ , and  $\theta$  are found as for the two standard parallel case.

The reverse formulas for  $\varphi$  and  $\lambda$  are as for the two standard parallel case above, with  $n, F$  and  $r_0$  as before and

$$\theta' = \text{atan}\{(E - FE)/[r_0 - (N - FN)]\}$$

$$r' = \pm\{(E - FE)^2 + [r_0 - (N - FN)]^2\}^{0.5}, \text{ taking the sign of } n$$

$$t' = (r'/(a k_0 F))^{1/n}$$

**Example:**

For Projected Coordinate Reference System: JAD69 / Jamaica National Grid

Parameters:

Ellipsoid:	Clarke 1866	$a = 6378206.400$ metres	$1/f = 294.97870$
	then	$e = 0.08227185$	$e^2 = 0.00676866$
Latitude of natural origin	$\varphi_0$	$18^\circ 00' 00'' \text{N}$	$= 0.31415927$ rad
Longitude of natural origin	$\lambda_0$	$77^\circ 00' 00'' \text{W}$	$= -1.34390352$ rad
Scale factor at natural origin	$k_0$	$1.000000$	
False easting	FE	$250000.00$ metres	
False northing	FN	$150000.00$ metres	

Forward calculation for:

Latitude	$\varphi$	$= 17^\circ 55' 55.80'' \text{N}$	$= 0.31297535$ rad
Longitude	$\lambda$	$= 76^\circ 56' 37.26'' \text{W}$	$= -1.34292061$ rad

first gives

$m_0$	$= 0.95136402$	$t_0$	$= 0.72806411$
$F$	$= 3.39591092$	$n$	$= 0.30901699$
$R$	$= 19643955.26$	$r_0$	$= 19636447.86$
$\theta$	$= 0.00030374$	$t$	$= 0.728965259$

Then Easting	$E$	$= 255966.58$ metres
Northing	$N$	$= 142493.51$ metres

Reverse calculation for the same easting and northing first gives

$\theta'$	$= 0.000303736$
$t'$	$= 0.728965259$
$m_0$	$= 0.95136402$
$r'$	$= 19643955.26$

Then Latitude	$\varphi$	$= 17^\circ 55' 55.80'' \text{N}$
Longitude	$\lambda$	$= 76^\circ 56' 37.26'' \text{W}$

### 1.3.1.3 Lambert Conic Conformal (West Orientated)

(EPSG dataset coordinate operation method code 9826)

In older mapping of Denmark and Greenland the Lambert Conic Conformal is used with axes positive north and **west**. To derive the projected Westing and Northing coordinates of a point with geographic coordinates ( $\varphi$ ,  $\lambda$ ) the formulas are as for the standard Lambert Conic Conformal (1SP) case above (EPSG dataset coordinate operation method code 9801) except for:

$$W = FE - r * \sin \theta$$

In this formula the term FE retains its definition, i.e. in the Lambert Conic Conformal (West Orientated) method it increases the Westing value at the natural origin. In this method it is effectively false westing (FW).

The reverse formulas to derive the latitude and longitude of a point from its Westing and Northing values are as for the standard Lambert Conic Conformal (1SP) case except for:

$$\theta' = \text{atan}[(FE - W) / \{r_0 - (N - FN)\}]$$

$$r' = +/- [(FE - W)^2 + \{r_0 - (N - FN)\}^2]^{0.5}, \text{ taking the sign of } n$$

### 1.3.1.4 Lambert Conic Conformal (2 SP Belgium)

(EPSG dataset coordinate operation method code 9803)

In 1972, in order to retain approximately the same grid coordinates after a change of geodetic datum, a modified form of the two standard parallel case was introduced in Belgium. In 2000 this modification was replaced through use of the regular Lambert Conic Conformal (2 SP) map projection with appropriately modified parameter values.

In the 1972 modification the formulas for the regular Lambert Conic Conformal (2SP) case given above are used except for:

$$\text{Easting, } E = E_F + r \sin(\theta - a)$$

$$\text{Northing, } N = N_F + r_F - r \cos(\theta - a)$$

and for the reverse formulas

$$\lambda = [(\theta' + a)/n] + \lambda_F$$

where  $a = 29.2985$  seconds.

#### **Example:**

For Projected Coordinate Reference System: Belge 1972 / Belge Lambert 72

Parameters:

Ellipsoid:	International 1924	$a = 6378388$ metres	$1/f = 297.0$
	then	$e = 0.08199189$	$e^2 = 0.006722670$
Latitude of false origin	$\varphi_F$	$90^\circ 00' 00'' \text{N}$	$= 1.57079633$ rad
Longitude of false origin	$\lambda_F$	$4^\circ 21' 24.983'' \text{E}$	$= 0.07604294$ rad
Latitude of 1 <sup>st</sup> standard parallel	$\varphi_1$	$49^\circ 50' 00'' \text{N}$	$= 0.86975574$ rad
Latitude of 2 <sup>nd</sup> standard parallel	$\varphi_2$	$51^\circ 10' 00'' \text{N}$	$= 0.89302680$ rad
Easting at false origin	$E_F$	$150000.01$	metres
Northing at false origin	$N_F$	$5400088.44$	metres

Forward calculation for:



$$\begin{array}{llll} \text{Latitude} & \varphi & = & 50^{\circ}40'46.461''\text{N} & = & 0.88452540 \text{ rad} \\ \text{Longitude} & \lambda & = & 5^{\circ}48'26.533''\text{E} & = & 0.10135773 \text{ rad} \end{array}$$

first gives :

$$\begin{array}{llll} m_1 & = & 0.64628304 & m_2 & = & 0.62834001 \\ t & = & 0.35913403 & t_F & = & 0.00 \\ t_1 & = & 0.36750382 & t_2 & = & 0.35433583 \\ n & = & 0.77164219 & F & = & 1.81329763 \\ r & = & 5248041.03 & r_F & = & 0.00 \\ \theta & = & 0.01953396 & a & = & 0.00014204 \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{llll} \text{Then Easting} & E & = & 251763.20 \text{ metres} \\ \text{Northing} & N & = & 153034.13 \text{ metres} \end{array}$$

Reverse calculation for same easting and northing first gives:

$$\begin{array}{ll} \theta' & = & 0.01939192 \\ t' & = & 0.35913403 \\ r' & = & 5248041.03 \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{llll} \text{Then Latitude} & \varphi & = & 50^{\circ}40'46.461''\text{N} \\ \text{Longitude} & \lambda & = & 5^{\circ}48'26.533''\text{E} \end{array}$$

### 1.3.1.5 Lambert Conic Near-Conformal

(EPSG dataset coordinate operation method code 9817)

The Lambert Conformal Conic with one standard parallel formulas, as published by the Army Map Service, are still in use in several countries. The AMS uses series expansion formulas for ease of computation, as was normal before the electronic computer made such approximate methods unnecessary. Where the expansion series have been carried to enough terms the results are the same to the centimetre level as through the Lambert Conic Conformal (1SP) formulas above. However in some countries the expansion formulas were truncated to the third order and the map projection is not fully conformal. The full formulas are used in Libya but from 1915 for France, Morocco, Algeria, Tunisia and Syria the truncated formulas were used. In 1943 in Algeria and Tunisia, from 1948 in France, from 1953 in Morocco and from 1973 in Syria the truncated formulas were replaced with the full formulas.

To compute the Lambert Conic Near-Conformal the following formulas are used. First compute constants for the projection:

$$\begin{array}{ll} n & = & f / (2 - f) \\ A & = & 1 / (6 \rho_0 v_0) \text{ where } \rho_0 \text{ and } v_0 \text{ are computed as in table 3 in section 1.2 above.} \\ A' & = & a [ 1 - n + 5 (n^2 - n^3) / 4 + 81 (n^4 - n^5) / 64 ] * \pi / 180 \\ B' & = & 3 a [ n - n^2 + 7 (n^3 - n^4) / 8 + 55 n^5 / 64 ] / 2 \\ C' & = & 15 a [ n^2 - n^3 + 3 (n^4 - n^5) / 4 ] / 16 \\ D' & = & 35 a [ n^3 - n^4 + 11 n^5 / 16 ] / 48 \\ E' & = & 315 a [ n^4 - n^5 ] / 512 \\ r_0 & = & k_0 v_0 / \tan \varphi_0 \\ s_0 & = & A' \varphi_0 - B' \sin 2\varphi_0 + C' \sin 4\varphi_0 - D' \sin 6\varphi_0 + E' \sin 8\varphi_0 \\ & & \text{where in the first term } \varphi_0 \text{ is in degrees, in the other terms } \varphi_0 \text{ is in radians.} \end{array}$$

Then for the computation of easting and northing from latitude and longitude:

$$\begin{array}{ll} s & = & A' \varphi - B' \sin 2\varphi + C' \sin 4\varphi - D' \sin 6\varphi + E' \sin 8\varphi \\ & & \text{where in the first term } \varphi \text{ is in degrees, in the other terms } \varphi \text{ is in radians.} \end{array}$$

$$\begin{aligned} m &= [s - s_0] \\ M &= k_0 (m + Am^3) \quad (\text{see footnote}^4) \\ r &= r_0 - M \\ \theta &= (\lambda - \lambda_0) \sin \varphi_0 \end{aligned}$$

and

$$\begin{aligned} E &= FE + r \sin \theta \\ N &= FN + M + r \sin \theta \tan (\theta / 2) \end{aligned}$$

The reverse formulas for  $\varphi$  and  $\lambda$  from E and N are:

$$\begin{aligned} \theta' &= \text{atan} \{ (E - FE) / [r_0 - (N - FN)] \} \\ r' &= \pm \{ (E - FE)^2 + [r_0 - (N - FN)]^2 \}^{0.5}, \text{ taking the sign of } \varphi_0 \\ M' &= r_0 - r' \end{aligned}$$

If an exact solution is required, it is necessary to solve for m and  $\varphi$  using iteration of the two equations  
Firstly:

$$m' = m - [M' - k_0 m - k_0 A (m')^3] / [-k_0 - 3 k_0 A (m')^2]$$

using M' for m' in the first iteration. This will usually converge (to within 1mm) in a single iteration.

Then

$$\varphi' = \varphi + \{ m' + s_0 - [A' \varphi' (180/\pi) - B' \sin 2\varphi' + C' \sin 4\varphi' - D' \sin 6\varphi' + E' \sin 8\varphi'] \} / A' (\pi/180)$$

first using  $\varphi' = \varphi_0 + m'/A' (\pi/180)$ .

However the following non-iterative solution is accurate to better than 0.001" (3mm) within 5 degrees latitude of the projection origin and should suffice for most purposes:

$$\begin{aligned} m' &= M' - [M' - k_0 M' - k_0 A (M')^3] / [-k_0 - 3 k_0 A (M')^2] \\ \varphi' &= \varphi_0 + m'/A' (\pi/180) \\ s' &= A' \varphi' - B' \sin 2\varphi' + C' \sin 4\varphi' - D' \sin 6\varphi' + E' \sin 8\varphi' \\ &\quad \text{where in the first term } \varphi' \text{ is in degrees, in the other terms } \varphi' \text{ is in radians.} \\ ds' &= A'(180/\pi) - 2B' \cos 2\varphi' + 4C' \cos 4\varphi' - 6D' \cos 6\varphi' + 8E' \cos 8\varphi' \\ \varphi &= \varphi' - [(m' + s_0 - s') / (-ds')] \text{ radians} \end{aligned}$$

Then after solution of  $\varphi$  using either method above

$$\lambda = \lambda_0 + \theta' / \sin \varphi_0 \text{ where } \lambda_0 \text{ and } \lambda \text{ are in radians}$$

### Example:

For Projected Coordinate Reference System: Deir ez Zor / Levant Zone

Parameters:

Ellipsoid:	Clarke 1880 (IGN)	a = 6378249.2 metres	1/f = 293.4660213
	then		n = 0.001706682563

Latitude of natural origin	$\varphi_0$	34°39'00"N	=	0.604756586 rad
Longitude of natural origin	$\lambda_0$	37°21'00"E	=	0.651880476 rad
Scale factor at natural origin	$k_0$	0.99962560		
False easting	FE	300000.00	metres	
False northing	FN	300000.00	metres	

Forward calculation for:

Latitude	$\varphi$	=	37°31'17.625"N	=	0.654874806 rad
Longitude	$\lambda$	=	34°08'11.291"E	=	0.595793792 rad

120120\_\_\_\_\_

<sup>4</sup> This is the term that is truncated to the third order. To be equivalent to the Lambert Conic Conformal (1SP) it would be  $M = k_0 (m + Am^3 + Bm^4 + Cm^5 + Dm^6)$ . B, C and D are not detailed here.

first gives :

A	=	$4.1067494 * 10^{-15}$	A'	=	111131.8633
B'	=	16300.64407	C'	=	17.38751
D'	=	0.02308	E'	=	0.000033
$s_0$	=	3835482.233	$r_0$	=	9235264.405
s	=	4154101.458	m	=	318619.225
M	=	318632.72	r	=	8916631.685
$\theta$	=	-0.03188875			

Then Easting	E	=	15707.96 metres	(c.f. E = 15708.00 using full formulas)
Northing	N	=	623165.96 metres	(c.f. N = 623167.20 using full formulas)

Reverse calculation for same easting and northing first gives:

$\theta'$	=	-0.031888749
$r'$	=	8916631.685
$M'$	=	318632.717

Using the non-iterative solution:

$m'$	=	318619.222
$\varphi'$	=	0.654795830
$s'$	=	4153599.259
$ds'$	=	6358907.456

Then Latitude	$\varphi$	=	0.654874806 rad	=	37°31'17.625"N
Longitude	$\lambda$	=	0.595793792 rad	=	34°08'11.291"E

### **1.3.2 Krovak Oblique Conformal Conic**

(EPSG dataset coordinate operation method code 9819)

The normal case of the Lambert Conformal conic is for the axis of the cone to be coincident with the minor axis of the ellipsoid, that is the axis of the cone is normal to the ellipsoid at a geographic pole. For the Oblique Conformal Conic the axis of the cone is normal to the ellipsoid at a defined location and its extension cuts the minor axis at a defined angle. The map projection method is similar in principle to the Oblique Mercator (see section 1.3.6). It is used in the Czech Republic and Slovakia under the name 'Krovak' projection, where like the Laborde oblique cylindrical projection in Madagascar (section 1.4.6.1) the rotation to north is made in spherical rather than plane coordinates. The geographic coordinates on the ellipsoid are first reduced to conformal coordinates on the conformal (Gaussian) sphere. These spherical coordinates are then rotated to north and the rotated spherical coordinates then projected onto the oblique cone and converted to grid coordinates. The pseudo standard parallel is defined on the conformal sphere after its rotation. It is then the parallel on this sphere at which the map projection is true to scale; on the ellipsoid it maps as a complex curve. A scale factor may be applied to the map projection to increase the useful area of coverage.

The defining parameters for the Krovak oblique conformal conic map projection are:

$\varphi_C$	=	latitude of projection centre, the point used as the origin of the conformal sphere
$\lambda_0$	=	longitude of origin
$\alpha_C$	=	azimuth on conformal sphere of initial line passing through the projection centre
	=	co-latitude of the cone axis at point of intersection with the conformal sphere
$\varphi_P$	=	latitude of pseudo standard parallel
$k_P$	=	scale factor on pseudo standard parallel
FE	=	Easting at grid origin
FN	=	Northing at grid origin

The grid origin is the intersection on the conformal sphere of the pseudo-standard parallel with the longitude of origin.

From these the following constants for the projection may be calculated :

$$\begin{aligned} A &= a (1 - e^2)^{0.5} / [1 - e^2 \sin^2(\varphi_C)] \\ B &= \{1 + [e^2 \cos^4 \varphi_C / (1 - e^2)]\}^{0.5} \\ \gamma_0 &= \text{asin} [\sin(\varphi_C) / B] \\ t_0 &= \tan(\pi / 4 + \gamma_0 / 2) \cdot [(1 + e \sin(\varphi_C)) / (1 - e \sin(\varphi_C))]^{e.B/2} / [\tan(\pi / 4 + \varphi_C / 2)]^B \\ n &= \sin(\varphi_P) \\ r_0 &= k_P A / \tan(\varphi_P) \end{aligned}$$

To derive the projected 'Easting' and 'Northing' coordinates of a point with geographic coordinates  $(\varphi, \lambda)$  the formulas for the Krovak oblique conic conformal are:

$$\text{Southing: } X = FN + r \cos \theta$$

$$\text{Westing: } Y = FE + r \sin \theta$$

where

$$\begin{aligned} U &= 2 (\text{atan} \{ t_0 \tan^B(\varphi / 2 + \pi / 4) / [(1 + e \sin(\varphi)) / (1 - e \sin(\varphi))]^{e.B/2} \} - \pi / 4) \\ V &= B (\lambda_0 - \lambda) \\ S &= \text{asin} [\cos(\alpha_C) \sin(U) + \sin(\alpha_C) \cos(U) \cos(V)] \\ D &= \text{asin} [\cos(U) \sin(V) / \cos(S)] \\ \theta &= n D \\ r &= r_0 \tan^n(\pi / 4 + \varphi_P / 2) / \tan^n(S / 2 + \pi / 4) \end{aligned}$$

Note that the terms 'Easting' and 'Northing' here refer to the two map grid coordinates. Their actual geographic direction depends upon the azimuth of the centre line. Note also that the formula for D is satisfactory for the normal use of the projection within the pseudo-longitude range on the conformal sphere of  $\pm 90$  degrees from the central line of the projection. Should there be a need to exceed this range (which is not necessary for application in the Czech and Slovak Republics) then for the calculation of D use:

$$\sin(D) = \cos(U) * \sin(V) / \cos(S)$$

$$\cos(D) = \{[\cos(\alpha_C) * \sin(S) - \sin(U)] / [\sin(\alpha_C) * \cos(S)]\}$$

$$D = \text{atan2}(\sin D, \cos D)$$

The reverse formulas to derive the latitude and longitude of a point from its 'Easting' (Y) and 'Northing' (X) values are:

$$\begin{aligned} r' &= [(Y - FE)^2 + (X - FN)^2]^{0.5} \\ \theta' &= \text{atan} [(Y - FE) / (X - FN)] \\ D' &= \theta' / \sin(\varphi_P) \\ S' &= 2 \{ \text{atan} [(r_0 / r')^{1/n} \tan(\pi / 4 + \varphi_P / 2)] - \pi / 4 \} \\ U' &= \text{asin} [\cos(\alpha_C) \sin(S') - \sin(\alpha_C) \cos(S') \cos(D')] \\ V' &= \text{asin} [\cos(S') \sin(D') / \cos(U')] \end{aligned}$$

Latitude  $\varphi$  is found by iteration using  $U'$  as the value for  $\varphi_{j-1}$  in the first iteration

$$\varphi_j = 2 (\text{atan} \{ t_0^{-1/B} \tan^{1/B}(U' / 2 + \pi / 4) [(1 + e \sin(\varphi_{j-1})) / (1 - e \sin(\varphi_{j-1}))]^{e/2} \} - \pi / 4)$$

3 iterations will usually suffice. Then:

$$\lambda = \lambda_0 - V' / B$$

### Example

For Projected Coordinate Reference System: S-JTSK (Ferro) / Krovak

N.B. Krovak projection uses Ferro as the prime meridian. This has a longitude with reference to Greenwich of 17 degrees 40 minutes West. To apply the formulas the defining longitudes must be corrected to the Greenwich meridian.

Parameters:

Ellipsoid:	Bessel 1841	a = 6377397.155metres	1/f = 299.15281
	then	e = 0.081696831	e <sup>2</sup> = 0.006674372
Latitude of projection centre	$\varphi_C$	49°30'00"N	= 0.863937979 rad
Longitude of origin	$\lambda_O$	42°30'00" East of Ferro	
		Longitude of Ferro is 17°40'00" West of Greenwich	
	$\lambda_O$ relative to Greenwich:	24°50'00"	= 0.433423431 rad
Azimuth of initial line	$\alpha_C$	30°17'17.3031"	
Latitude of pseudo standard parallel	$\varphi_P$	78°30'00"N	
Scale factor on pseudo standard parallel	$k_P$	0.9999	
Easting at grid origin	FE	0.00	metres
Northing at grid origin	FN	0.00	metres

Projection constants:

A	=	6380703.611	B	=	1.000597498
$\gamma_O$	=	0.863239103	$t_O$	=	1.003419164
n	=	0.979924705	$r_O$	=	1298039.005

Forward calculation for:

Latitude	$\varphi$	=	50°12'32.4416"N	=	0.876312566 rad
Longitude	$\lambda$	=	16°50'59.1790"E	=	0.294083999 rad

first gives :

U	=	0.875596949
V	=	0.139422687
S	=	1.386275049
D	=	0.506554623
$\theta$	=	0.496385389
r	=	1194731.014

Then 'Northing'	X	=	1050538.643 metres
'Easting'	Y	=	568990.997 metres

where 'Northing' increases southwards and 'Easting' increases westwards.

Reverse calculation for the same 'Northing' and 'Easting' gives

r'	=	1194731.014
$\theta'$	=	0.496385389
D'	=	0.506554623
S'	=	1.386275049
U'	=	0.875596949
V'	=	0.139422687

Then by iteration

$$\begin{aligned}\varphi_1 &= 0.876310601 \text{ rad} \\ \varphi_2 &= 0.876312560 \text{ rad} \\ \varphi_3 &= 0.876312566 \text{ rad}\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Latitude } \varphi &= 0.876312566 \text{ rad} &= 50^\circ 12' 32.4416'' \text{N} \\ \text{Longitude } \lambda &= 0.294083999 \text{ rad} &= 16^\circ 50' 59.1790'' \text{E of Greenwich}\end{aligned}$$

### 1.3.3 Mercator

(EPSG dataset coordinate operation method codes 9804 and 9805)

The Mercator map projection is a special limiting case of the Lambert Conic Conformal map projection with the equator as the single standard parallel. All other parallels of latitude are straight lines and the meridians are also straight lines at right angles to the equator, equally spaced. It is the basis for the transverse and oblique forms of the projection. It is little used for land mapping purposes but is in almost universal use for navigation charts. As well as being conformal, it has the particular property that straight lines drawn on it are lines of constant bearing. Thus navigators may derive their course from the angle the straight course line makes with the meridians.

In the few cases in which the Mercator projection is used for terrestrial applications or land mapping, such as in Indonesia prior to the introduction of the Universal Transverse Mercator, a scale factor may be applied to the projection. This has the same effect as choosing two standard parallels on which the true scale is maintained at equal north and south latitudes either side of the equator.

The formulas to derive projected Easting and Northing coordinates are:

For the two standard parallel case,  $k_0$ , the scale factor at the equator or natural origin, is first calculated from

$$k_0 = \cos \varphi_1 / (1 - e^2 \sin^2 \varphi_1)^{0.5}$$

where  $\varphi_1$  is the absolute value of the first standard parallel (i.e. positive).

Then, for both one and two standard parallel cases,

$$\begin{aligned}E &= FE + a k_0 (\lambda - \lambda_0) \\ N &= FN + a k_0 \ln \left\{ \tan \left( \frac{\pi}{4} + \frac{\varphi}{2} \right) \left[ \frac{1 - e \sin \varphi}{1 + e \sin \varphi} \right]^{(e/2)} \right\} \\ &\quad \text{where symbols are as listed above and logarithms are natural.}\end{aligned}$$

The reverse formulas to derive latitude and longitude from E and N values are:

$$\begin{aligned}\varphi &= \chi + (e^2/2 + 5e^4/24 + e^6/12 + 13e^8/360) \sin(2\chi) \\ &\quad + (7e^4/48 + 29e^6/240 + 811e^8/11520) \sin(4\chi) \\ &\quad + (7e^6/120 + 81e^8/1120) \sin(6\chi) + (4279e^8/161280) \sin(8\chi)\end{aligned}$$

where  $\chi = \pi/2 - 2 \operatorname{atan} t$

$$t = B^{(FN-N)/(a \cdot k_0)}$$

B = base of the natural logarithm, 2.7182818...

and for the 2 SP case,  $k_0$  is calculated as for the forward transformation above.

$$\lambda = [(E - FE)/ak_0] + \lambda_0$$

Note that in these formulas common to both 1SP and 2SP cases, the parameter *latitude of natural origin* ( $\varphi_0$ ) is not used. However for the Mercator (1SP) method, for completeness in CRS labelling the EPSG dataset includes this parameter, which must have a value of zero.

**Examples:**

**1. Mercator (with two standard parallels) (EPSG dataset coordinate operation method code 9805)**

For Projected Coordinate Reference System: Pulkovo 1942 / Mercator Caspian Sea

Parameters:

Ellipsoid:	Krassowski 1940	a = 6378245.0 metres	1/f = 298.3
	then	e = 0.08181333	e <sup>2</sup> = 0.00669342
Latitude of 1 <sup>st</sup> standard parallel	$\varphi_1$	42°00'00"N	= 0.73303829 rad
Longitude of natural origin	$\lambda_0$	51°00'00"E	= 0.89011792 rad
False easting	FE	0.00	metres
False northing	FN	0.00	metres

then scale factor at natural origin  $k_0$  (at latitude of natural origin at 0°N) = 0.744260894.

Forward calculation for:

Latitude	$\varphi$	= 53°00'00.00"N	= 0.9250245 rad
Longitude	$\lambda$	= 53°00'00.00"E	= 0.9250245 rad

gives	Easting	E	= 165704.29 metres
	Northing	N	= 5171848.07 metres

Reverse calculation for same easting and northing first gives:

t	= 0.336391288
$\chi$	= 0.921795958

Then	Latitude	$\varphi$	= 53°00'00.000"N
	Longitude	$\lambda$	= 53°00'00.000"E

**2. Mercator (1SP) (EPSG dataset coordinate operation method code 9804)**

For Projected Coordinate Reference System: Makassar / NEIEZ

Parameters:

Ellipsoid:	Bessel 1841	a = 6377397.155metres	1/f = 299.15281
	then	e = 0.081696831	
Latitude of natural origin	$\varphi_0$	0°00'00"N	= 0.0 rad
Longitude of natural origin	$\lambda_0$	110°00'00"E	= 1.91986218 rad
Scale factor at natural origin	$k_0$	0.997	
False easting	FE	3900000.00	metres
False northing	FN	900000.00	metres

Forward calculation for:

Latitude	$\varphi$	= 3°00'00.00"S	= -0.05235988 rad
Longitude	$\lambda$	= 120°00'00.00"E	= 2.09439510 rad

gives	Easting	E	= 5009726.58 metres
	Northing	N	= 569150.82 metres

Reverse calculation for same easting and northing first gives:

$$\begin{aligned} t &= 1.0534121 \\ \chi &= -0.0520110 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Then Latitude } \varphi &= 3^{\circ}00'00.000''\text{S} \\ \text{Longitude } \lambda &= 120^{\circ}00'00.000''\text{E} \end{aligned}$$

### 1.3.3.1 Mercator (Spherical)

(EPSG dataset coordinate operation method code 1026)

The formulas to derive projected Easting and Northing coordinates from spherical latitude  $\varphi$  and longitude  $\lambda$  are:

$$\begin{aligned} E &= FE + R (\lambda - \lambda_0) \\ N &= FN + R \ln[\tan(\pi/4 + \varphi/2)] \end{aligned}$$

where  $\lambda_0$  is the longitude of natural origin and FE and FN are false easting and false nothing.

R is the radius of the sphere and will normally be one of the CRS parameters. If the figure of the earth used is an ellipsoid rather than a sphere then R should be calculated as the radius of the conformal sphere at the projection origin at latitude  $\varphi_0$  using the formula for  $R_C$  given in section 1.2, table 3. Note however that if applying spherical formula to ellipsoidal coordinates, the projection properties are not preserved.

If latitude  $\varphi = 90^{\circ}$ , N is infinite. The above formula for N will fail near to the pole, and should not be used poleward of  $88^{\circ}$ .

The reverse formulas to derive latitude and longitude on the sphere from E and N values are:

$$\begin{aligned} D &= -(N - FN) / R = (FN - N) / R \\ \varphi &= \pi/2 - 2 \operatorname{atan}(e^D) \text{ where } e = \text{base of natural logarithms, } 2.7182818\dots \\ \lambda &= [(E - FE)/R] + \lambda_0 \end{aligned}$$

Note that in these formulas, the parameter *latitude of natural origin* ( $\varphi_0$ ) is not used. However for the Mercator (Spherical) method, for completeness in CRS labelling the EPSG dataset includes this parameter, which must have a value of zero.

### Example

For Projected Coordinate Reference System: World Spherical Mercator

Parameters:

Sphere:	R = 6371007.0 metres
Latitude of natural origin	$\varphi_0$ 0°00'00.000"N = 0.0 rad
Longitude of natural origin	$\lambda_0$ 0°00'00.000"E = 0.0 rad
False easting	FE 0.00 metres
False northing	FN 0.00 metres

Forward calculation for:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Latitude } \varphi &= 24^{\circ}22'54.433''\text{N} = 0.425542460 \text{ rad} \\ \text{Longitude } \lambda &= 100^{\circ}20'00.000''\text{W} = -1.751147016 \text{ rad} \end{aligned}$$

whence

$$\begin{aligned} E &= -11\,156\,569.90 \text{ m} \\ N &= 2\,796\,869.94 \text{ m} \end{aligned}$$



Reverse calculation for the same point (–11 156 569.90 m E, 2 796 869.94m N) first gives:

$$D = -0.438999665$$

$$\begin{array}{lclclcl} \text{Then} & \text{Latitude} & \varphi & = & 0.425542460 \text{ rad} & = & 24^\circ 22' 54.433'' \text{N} \\ & \text{Longitude} & \lambda & = & -1.751147016 \text{ rad} & = & 100^\circ 20' 00.000'' \text{W} \end{array}$$

### 1.3.3.2 Popular Visualisation Pseudo Mercator (EPSG dataset coordinate operation method code 1024)

This method is utilised by some popular web mapping and visualisation applications. It applies standard Mercator (Spherical) formulas (section 1.3.3.1 above) to ellipsoidal coordinates and the sphere radius is taken to be the semi-major axis of the ellipsoid. This approach only approximates to the more rigorous application of ellipsoidal formulas to ellipsoidal coordinates (as given in EPSG dataset coordinate operation method codes 9804 and 9805 in section 1.3.3 above). Unlike either the spherical or ellipsoidal Mercator projection methods, this method is not conformal: scale factor varies as a function of azimuth, which creates angular distortion. Despite angular distortion there is no convergence in the meridian.

The formulas to derive projected Easting and Northing coordinates from ellipsoidal latitude  $\varphi$  and longitude  $\lambda$  first derive the radius of the sphere (R) from:

$$R = a$$

Then applying spherical Mercator formulae:

$$\begin{aligned} E &= FE + R (\lambda - \lambda_0) \\ N &= FN + R \ln[\tan(\pi/4 + \varphi/2)] \end{aligned}$$

where symbols are as listed in 1.3.3.1 above and logarithms are natural.

If latitude  $\varphi = 90^\circ$ , N is infinite. The above formula for N will fail near to the pole, and should not be used poleward of  $88^\circ$ .

The reverse formulas to derive latitude and longitude on the ellipsoid from E and N values are:

$$\begin{aligned} D &= -(N - FN) / R = (FN - N) / R \\ \varphi &= \pi/2 - 2 \operatorname{atan}(e^D) \text{ where } e = \text{base of natural logarithms, } 2.7182818\dots \\ \lambda &= [(E - FE)/R] + \lambda_0 \end{aligned}$$

$q_\alpha$  is the scale factor at a given azimuth  $\alpha$ . It is a function of the radius of curvature at that azimuth,  $R'$ , derived from:

$$\begin{aligned} R' &= \rho v / (v \cos^2 \alpha + \rho \sin^2 \alpha) \\ q_\alpha &= R / (R' \cos \varphi) \end{aligned}$$

where  $\rho$  and  $v$  are the radii of curvature of the ellipsoid at latitude  $\varphi$  in the plane of the meridian and perpendicular to the meridian respectively;

$$\begin{aligned} \rho &= a (1 - e^2) / (1 - e^2 \sin^2 \varphi)^{3/2} \\ v &= a / (1 - e^2 \sin^2 \varphi)^{1/2} \end{aligned}$$

Then when the azimuth is  $0^\circ$ ,  $180^\circ$ ,  $90^\circ$  or  $270^\circ$  the scale factors in the meridian (h) and on the parallel (k) are:

$$\begin{aligned} q_0 &= q_{180} = h = R / (\rho \cos \varphi) \\ q_{90} &= q_{270} = k = R / (v \cos \varphi) \end{aligned}$$

which demonstrates the non-conformality of the Pseudo Mercator method.

Maximum angular distortion  $\omega$  is a function of latitude and is found from:

$$\omega = 2 \operatorname{asin}\{[\operatorname{ABS}(h - k)] / (h + k)\}$$

Note that in these formulas, as with those of the Mercator (spherical) method above, the parameter *latitude of natural origin* ( $\varphi_0$ ) is not used. However for completeness in CRS labelling the EPSG dataset includes this parameter, which must have a value of zero.

### Example

For Projected Coordinate Reference System: WGS 84 / Pseudo-Mercator

Parameters:

Ellipsoid:	WGS 84	a = 6378137.0 metres	1/f = 298.2572236
Latitude of natural origin	$\varphi_0$	0°00'00.000"N	= 0.0 rad
Longitude of natural origin	$\lambda_0$	0°00'00.000"E	= 0.0 rad
False easting	FE	0.00	metres
False northing	FN	0.00	metres

Forward calculation for the same coordinate values as used for the Mercator (Spherical) example in 1.3.3.1 above:

Latitude	$\varphi$	=	24°22'54.433"N	=	0.425542460 rad
Longitude	$\lambda$	=	100°20'00.000"W	=	-1.751147016 rad

$$R = 6378137.0$$

whence

$$E = -11\,169\,055.58 \text{ m}$$

$$N = 2\,800\,000.00 \text{ m}$$

and

$$h = 1.1034264$$

$$k = 1.0972914$$

$$\omega = 0^\circ 19' 10.01''$$

Reverse calculation for a point 10km north on the grid (-11 169 055.58 m E, 2 810 000.00m N) first gives:

$$D = -0.44056752$$

Then	Latitude	$\varphi$	=	0.426970023 rad	=	24°27'48.889"N
	Longitude	$\lambda$	=	-1.751147016 rad	=	100°20'00.000"W

In comparison, the same WGS 84 ellipsoidal coordinates when converted to the WGS 84 / World Mercator projected coordinate reference system (EPSG CRS code 3395) using the ellipsoidal Mercator (1SP) method described above results in a grid distance between the two points of 9944.4m, a scale difference of ~0.5%.

<u>WGS 84</u>		<u>WGS 84 / Pseudo-Mercator</u>		<u>WGS 84 / World Mercator</u>	
Latitude	Longitude	Easting	Northing	Easting	Northing
24°27'48.889"N	100°20'00.000"W	-11169055.58m	2810000.00m	-11169055.58m	2792311.49m
24°22'54.433"N	100°20'00.000"W	-11169055.58m	2800000.00m	-11169055.58m	2782367.06m
		0.00m	10000.00m	0.00m	9944.43m

### 1.3.4 Cassini-Soldner

(EPSG dataset coordinate operation method code 9806)

The Cassini-Soldner projection is the ellipsoidal version of the Cassini projection for the sphere. It is not conformal but as it is relatively simple to construct it was extensively used in the last century and is still useful for mapping areas with limited longitudinal extent. It has now largely been replaced by the conformal Transverse Mercator which it resembles. Like this, it has a straight central meridian along which the scale is true, all other meridians and parallels are curved, and the scale distortion increases rapidly with increasing distance from the central meridian.

The formulas to derive projected Easting and Northing coordinates are:

$$\text{Easting, } E = FE + v[A - TA^3/6 - (8 - T + 8C)TA^5/120]$$

$$\text{Northing, } N = FN + X$$

where  $X = M - M_0 + v \tan \varphi [A^2/2 + (5 - T + 6C)A^4/24]$

$$A = (\lambda - \lambda_0) \cos \varphi$$

$$T = \tan^2 \varphi$$

$$C = e^2 \cos^2 \varphi / (1 - e^2)$$

$$v = a / (1 - e^2 \sin^2 \varphi)^{0.5}$$

and  $M$ , the distance along the meridian from equator to latitude  $\varphi$ , is given by

$$M = a[(1 - e^2/4 - 3e^4/64 - 5e^6/256 - \dots)\varphi - (3e^2/8 + 3e^4/32 + 45e^6/1024 + \dots)\sin 2\varphi + (15e^4/256 + 45e^6/1024 + \dots)\sin 4\varphi - (35e^6/3072 + \dots)\sin 6\varphi + \dots]$$

with  $\varphi$  in radians.

$M_0$  is the value of  $M$  calculated for the latitude of the natural origin  $\varphi_0$ . This may not necessarily be chosen as the equator.

To compute latitude and longitude from Easting and Northing the reverse formulas are:

$$\varphi = \varphi_1 - (v_1 \tan \varphi_1 / \rho_1) [D^2/2 - (1 + 3T_1)D^4/24]$$

$$\lambda = \lambda_0 + [D - T_1 D^3/3 + (1 + 3T_1)T_1 D^5/15] / \cos \varphi_1$$

where

$$v_1 = a / (1 - e^2 \sin^2 \varphi_1)^{0.5}$$

$$\rho_1 = a(1 - e^2) / (1 - e^2 \sin^2 \varphi_1)^{1.5}$$

$\varphi_1$  is the latitude of the point on the central meridian which has the same Northing as the point whose coordinates are sought, and is found from:

$$\varphi_1 = \mu_1 + (3e_1/2 - 27e_1^3/32 + \dots)\sin 2\mu_1 + (21e_1^2/16 - 55e_1^4/32 + \dots)\sin 4\mu_1 + (151e_1^3/96 + \dots)\sin 6\mu_1 + (1097e_1^4/512 - \dots)\sin 8\mu_1 + \dots$$

where

$$e_1 = [1 - (1 - e^2)^{0.5}] / [1 + (1 - e^2)^{0.5}]$$

$$\mu_1 = M_1 / [a(1 - e^2/4 - 3e^4/64 - 5e^6/256 - \dots)]$$

$$M_1 = M_0 + (N - FN)$$

$$T_1 = \tan^2 \varphi_1$$

$$D = (E - FE) / v_1$$

**Example**

For Projected Coordinate Reference System: Trinidad 1903 / Trinidad Grid

Parameters:

Ellipsoid:	Clarke 1858	a = 20926348 ft	=	31706587.88 Clarke's links
		b = 20855233 ft		
	then	1/f = 294.2606764		e <sup>2</sup> = 0.006785146
Latitude of natural origin		φ <sub>0</sub> 10°26'30"N	=	0.182241463 rad
Longitude of natural origin		λ <sub>0</sub> 61°20'00"W	=	-1.070468608 rad
False easting		FE 430000.00		Clarke's links
False northing		FN 325000.00		Clarke's links

Forward calculation for:

Latitude	φ	=	10°00'00.00"N	=	0.17453293 rad
Longitude	λ	=	62°00'00.00"W	=	-1.08210414 rad

first gives :

A	=	-0.01145876	C	=	0.00662550
T	=	0.03109120	M	=	5496860.24
v	=	31709831.92	M <sub>0</sub>	=	5739691.12

Then Easting	E	=	66644.94 Clarke's links
Northing	N	=	82536.22 Clarke's links

Reverse calculation for same easting and northing first gives:

e <sub>1</sub>	=	0.00170207	D	=	-0.01145875
T <sub>1</sub>	=	0.03109544	M <sub>1</sub>	=	5497227.34
v <sub>1</sub>	=	31709832.34	μ <sub>1</sub>	=	0.17367306
φ <sub>1</sub>	=	0.17454458	ρ <sub>1</sub>	=	31501122.40

Then Latitude	φ	=	10°00'00.000"N
Longitude	λ	=	62°00'00.000"W

**1.3.4.1 Hyperbolic Cassini-Soldner**

(EPSG dataset coordinate operation method code 9833)

The grid for the island of Vanua Levu, Fiji, uses a modified form of the standard Cassini-Soldner projection known as the Hyperbolic Cassini-Soldner.

Easting is calculated as for the standard Cassini-Soldner above. The standard Cassini-Soldner formula to derive projected Northing is modified to:

$$\text{Northing, } N = FN + X - (X^3/6\rho v)$$

where  $\rho = a(1 - e^2)/(1 - e^2 \sin^2 \varphi)^{1.5}$  and X and v are as in the standard Cassini-Soldner above.

For the reverse calculation of latitude and longitude from easting and northing the standard Cassini-Soldner formula given in the previous section need to be modified to account for the hyperbolic correction factor (X<sup>3</sup>/6ρv). Specifically for the Fiji Vanua Levu grid the following may be used. The standard Cassini-Soldner formula given in the previous section are used except that the equation for M<sub>1</sub> is modified to

$$M_1 = M_0 + (N - FN) + q$$

where

$$\begin{aligned}\varphi_1' &= \varphi_0 + (N - FN)/315320 \\ \rho_1' &= a(1 - e^2)/(1 - e^2 \sin^2 \varphi_1')^{1.5} \\ \nu_1' &= a / (1 - e^2 \sin^2 \varphi_1')^{0.5} \\ q' &= (N - FN)^3 / 6 \rho_1' \nu_1' \\ q &= (N - FN + q')^3 / 6 \rho_1' \nu_1'\end{aligned}$$

### Example

For Projected Coordinate Reference System: Vanua Levu 1915 / Vanua Levu Grid

Parameters:

Ellipsoid:	Clarke 1880	a = 20926202 ft	= 317063.667 chains
		b = 20854895 ft	
	then	1/f = 293.4663077	e <sup>2</sup> = 0.006803481

Latitude of natural origin	$\varphi_0$	16°15'00"S	= -0.283616003 rad
Longitude of natural origin	$\lambda_0$	179°20'00"E	= 3.129957125 rad
False easting	FE	12513.318	chains
False northing	FN	16628.885	chains

Forward calculation for:

Latitude	$\varphi$	= 16°50'29.2435"S	= -0.293938867 rad
Longitude	$\lambda$	= 179°59'39.6115"E	= 3.141493807 rad

first gives :

A	= 0.011041875	C	= 0.006275088
T	= 0.091631819	M	= -92590.02
$\nu$	= 317154.24	M <sub>O</sub>	= -89336.59
$\rho$	= 315176.48	X	= -3259.28

Then Easting	E	= 16015.2890 chains
Northing	N	= 13369.6601 chains

Reverse calculation for same easting and northing first gives:'

$\varphi_1'$	= 0.293952249	$q'$	= -0.058
$\nu_1'$	= 317154.25	$q$	= -0.058
$\rho_1'$	= 315176.50		
$e_1$	= 0.001706681	D	= 0.011041854
T <sub>1</sub>	= 0.091644092	M <sub>1</sub>	= -92595.87
$\nu_1$	= 317154.25	$\mu_1$	= -0.292540098
$\rho_1$	= 315176.51	$\varphi_1$	= -0.293957437

Then Latitude	$\varphi$	= 16°50'29.2435"S
Longitude	$\lambda$	= 179°59'39.6115"E

## 1.3.5 Transverse Mercator

### 1.3.5.1 General Case

(EPSG dataset coordinate operation method code 9807)

The Transverse Mercator projection in its various forms is the most widely used projected coordinate system for world topographical and offshore mapping. All versions have the same basic characteristics and formulas. The differences which distinguish the different forms of the projection which are applied in

different countries arise from variations in the choice of values for the coordinate conversion parameters, namely the latitude of the natural origin, the longitude of the natural origin (central meridian), the scale factor at the natural origin (on the central meridian), and the values of False Easting and False Northing, which embody the units of measurement, given to the origin. Additionally there are variations in the width of the longitudinal zones for the projections used in different territories.

The following table indicates the variations in the coordinate conversion parameters which distinguish the different forms of the Transverse Mercator projection and are used in the EPSG dataset Transverse Mercator map projection operations:

TABLE 4  
**Transverse Mercator**

<b>Coordinate Operation Method Name</b>	<b>Areas used</b>	<b>Central meridian</b>	<b>Latitude of natural origin</b>	<b>CM Scale Factor</b>	<b>Zone width</b>	<b>False Easting</b>	<b>False Northing</b>
<b>Transverse Mercator</b>	Various, world wide	Various	Various	Various	Usually less than 6°	Various	Various
<b>Transverse Mercator south oriented</b>	Southern Africa	2° intervals E of 11°E	0°	1.000000	2°	0m	0m
<b>UTM North hemisphere</b>	World wide equator to 84 °N	6° intervals E & W of 3° E & W	Always 0°	Always 0.9996	Always 6°	500000 m	0m
<b>UTM South hemisphere</b>	World wide north of 80°S to equator	6° intervals E & W of 3° E & W	Always 0°	Always 0.9996	Always 6°	500000 m	10000000 m
<b>Gauss-Kruger</b>	Former USSR, Yugoslavia, Germany, S. America, China	Various, according to area of cover	Usually 0°	Usually 1.000000	Usually less than 6° , often less than 4°	Various but often 500000 prefixed by zone number	Various
<b>Gauss Boaga</b>	Italy	Various	Various	0.9996	6°	Various	0m

The most familiar and commonly used Transverse Mercator in the oil industry is the Universal Transverse Mercator (UTM) whose natural origin lies on the equator. However, some territories use a Transverse Mercator with a natural origin at a latitude of natural origin closer to that territory.

In the EPSG dataset the coordinate conversion method is considered to be the same for all forms of the Transverse Mercator projection. The formulas to derive the projected Easting and Northing coordinates for the normal case (EPSG dataset coordinate operation method code 9807) are in the form of a series as follows:

$$\text{Easting, } E = FE + k_0 v [A + (1 - T + C)A^3/6 + (5 - 18T + T^2 + 72C - 58e'^2)A^5/120]$$

$$\text{Northing, } N = FN + k_0 \{M - M_0 + v \tan \varphi [A^2/2 + (5 - T + 9C + 4C^2)A^4/24 +$$

$$(61 - 58T + T^2 + 600C - 330e^2)A^6/720\}$$

where  $T = \tan^2\varphi$

$$C = e^2 \cos^2\varphi / (1 - e^2)$$

$$A = (\lambda - \lambda_0)\cos\varphi, \text{ with } \lambda \text{ and } \lambda_0 \text{ in radians}$$

$$v = a / (1 - e^2 \sin^2\varphi)^{0.5}$$

$$M = a[(1 - e^2/4 - 3e^4/64 - 5e^6/256 - \dots)\varphi - (3e^2/8 + 3e^4/32 + 45e^6/1024 + \dots)\sin 2\varphi + (15e^4/256 + 45e^6/1024 + \dots)\sin 4\varphi - (35e^6/3072 + \dots)\sin 6\varphi + \dots]$$

with  $\varphi$  in radians and  $M_0$  for  $\varphi_0$ , the latitude of the origin, derived in the same way.

The reverse formulas to convert Easting and Northing projected coordinates to latitude and longitude are:

$$\varphi = \varphi_1 - (v_1 \tan\varphi_1/\rho_1)[D^2/2 - (5 + 3T_1 + 10C_1 - 4C_1^2 - 9e^2)D^4/24 + (61 + 90T_1 + 298C_1 + 45T_1^2 - 252e^2 - 3C_1^2)D^6/720]$$

$$\lambda = \lambda_0 + [D - (1 + 2T_1 + C_1)D^3/6 + (5 - 2C_1 + 28T_1 - 3C_1^2 + 8e^2 + 24T_1^2)D^5/120] / \cos\varphi_1$$

where

$$v_1 = a / (1 - e^2 \sin^2\varphi_1)^{0.5}$$

$$\rho_1 = a(1 - e^2)/(1 - e^2 \sin^2\varphi_1)^{1.5}$$

$\varphi_1$  may be found as for the Cassini projection from:

$$\varphi_1 = \mu_1 + (3e_1/2 - 27e_1^3/32 + \dots)\sin 2\mu_1 + (21e_1^2/16 - 55e_1^4/32 + \dots)\sin 4\mu_1 + (151e_1^3/96 + \dots)\sin 6\mu_1 + (1097e_1^4/512 - \dots)\sin 8\mu_1 + \dots$$

and where

$$e_1 = [1 - (1 - e^2)^{0.5}]/[1 + (1 - e^2)^{0.5}]$$

$$\mu_1 = M_1/[a(1 - e^2/4 - 3e^4/64 - 5e^6/256 - \dots)]$$

$$M_1 = M_0 + (N - FN)/k_0$$

$$T_1 = \tan^2\varphi_1$$

$$C_1 = e^2 \cos^2\varphi_1$$

$$e^2 = e^2 / (1 - e^2)$$

$$D = (E - FE)/(v_1 k_0)$$

For areas south of the equator the value of latitude  $\varphi$  will be negative and the formulas above, to compute the E and N, will automatically result in the correct values. Note that the false northings of the origin, if the equator, will need to be large to avoid negative northings and for the UTM projection is in fact 10,000,000m. Alternatively, as in the case of Argentina's Transverse Mercator (Gauss-Kruger) zones, the origin is at the south pole with a northings of zero. However each zone central meridian takes a false easting of 500000m prefixed by an identifying zone number. This ensures that instead of points in different zones having the same eastings, every point in the country, irrespective of its projection zone, will have a unique set of projected system coordinates. Strict application of the above formulas, with south latitudes negative, will result in the derivation of the correct Eastings and Northings.

Similarly, in applying the reverse formulas to determine a latitude south of the equator, a negative sign for  $\varphi$  results from a negative  $\varphi_1$  which in turn results from a negative  $M_1$ .

**Example**

For Projected Coordinate Reference System OSGB 1936 / British National Grid

Parameters:

Ellipsoid:	Airy 1830	a = 6377563.396 metres	1/f = 299.32496
	then	e <sup>2</sup> = 0.00667054	e' <sup>2</sup> = 0.00671534
Latitude of natural origin	$\varphi_0$	49°00'00"N	= 0.85521133 rad
Longitude of natural origin	$\lambda_0$	2°00'00"W	= -0.03490659 rad
Scale factor at natural origin	$k_0$	0.9996012717	
False easting	FE	400000.00	metres
False northing	FN	-100000.00	metres

Forward calculation for:

Latitude	$\varphi$	= 50°30'00.00"N	= 0.88139127 rad
Longitude	$\lambda$	= 00°30'00.00"E	= 0.00872665 rad

first gives :

A	=	0.02775415	C	=	0.00271699
T	=	1.47160434	M	=	5596050.46
v	=	6390266.03	M <sub>0</sub>	=	5429228.60

Then Easting	E	=	577274.99 metres
Northing	N	=	69740.50 metres

Reverse calculation for same easting and northing first gives:

e <sub>1</sub>	=	0.00167322	$\mu_1$	=	0.87939562
M <sub>1</sub>	=	5599036.80	v <sub>1</sub>	=	6390275.88
$\varphi_1$	=	0.88185987	D	=	0.02775243
$\rho_1$	=	6372980.21	C <sub>1</sub>	=	0.00271391
T <sub>1</sub>	=	1.47441726			

Then Latitude	$\varphi$	=	50°30'00.000"N
Longitude	$\lambda$	=	00°30'00.000"E

**1.3.5.2 Transverse Mercator Zoned Grid System**

(EPSG dataset coordinate operation method code 9824)

When the growth in distortion away from the projection origin is of concern, a projected coordinate reference system cannot be used far from its origin. A means of creating a grid system over a large area but also limiting distortion is to have several grid zones with most defining parameters being made common. Coordinates throughout the system are repeated in each zone. To make coordinates unambiguous the easting is prefixed by the relevant zone number. This procedure was adopted by German mapping in the 1930's through the Gauss-Kruger systems and later by American military mapping through the Universal Transverse Mercator (or UTM) grid system. (Note: subsequent civilian adoption of the systems usually ignores the zone prefix to easting. Where this is the case the formulas below do not apply: use the standard TM formula separately for each zone).

The parameter Longitude of natural origin ( $\lambda_0$ ) is changed from being a defining parameter to a derived parameter, replaced by two other defining parameters, the Initial Longitude (the western limit of zone 1) ( $\lambda_i$ ) and the Zone Width (W). Each of the remaining four Transverse Mercator defining parameters – Latitude of natural origin, Scale factor at natural origin, False easting and False northing – have the same parameter values in every zone.



The standard Transverse Mercator formulas above are modified as follows:

Zone number,  $Z$ , =  $\text{INT}((\lambda + \lambda_1 + W) / W)$  with  $\lambda$ ,  $\lambda_1$  and  $W$  in degrees.  
 where  $\lambda_1$  is the Initial Longitude of the zoned grid system  
 and  $W$  is the width of each zone of the zoned grid system.  
 If  $\lambda < 0$ ,  $\lambda = (\lambda + 360)$  degrees.

Then,

$$\lambda_0 = [Z W] - [\lambda_1 + (W/2)]$$

For the forward calculation,

$$\text{Easting, } E = Z * 10^6 + FE + k_0 \cdot v [A + (1 - T + C)A^3/6 + (5 - 18T + T^2 + 72C - 58e'^2)A^5/120]$$

and in the reverse calculation for longitude,

$$D = (E - [FE + Z * 10^6]) / (v_1 k_0)$$

### 1.3.5.3 **Transverse Mercator (South Orientated)** (EPSG dataset coordinate operation method code 9808)

For the mapping of southern Africa a south oriented Transverse Mercator map projection method is used. Here the coordinate axes are called Westings and Southings and increment to the West and South from the origin respectively. See Figure 3 for a diagrammatic illustration. The general case of the Transverse Mercator formulas given above need to be modified to cope with this arrangement with

$$\text{Westing, } W = FE - k_0 v [A + (1 - T + C)A^3/6 + (5 - 18T + T^2 + 72C - 58e'^2)A^5/120]$$

$$\text{Southing, } S = FN - k_0 \{M - M_0 + v \tan \varphi [A^2/2 + (5 - T + 9C + 4C^2)A^4/24 + (61 - 58T + T^2 + 600C - 330e'^2)A^6/720]\}$$

In these formulas the terms  $FE$  and  $FN$  retain their definition, i.e. in the Transverse Mercator (South Orientated) method they increase the Westing and Southing value at the natural origin. In this method they are effectively false westing ( $FW$ ) and false southing ( $FS$ ) respectively.

For the reverse formulas, those for the general case of the Transverse Mercator given above apply, with the exception that:

$$M_1 = M_0 - (S - FN) / k_0$$

and  $D = -(W - FE) / (v_1 k_0)$ , with  $v_1 = v$  for  $\varphi_1$

### **Example**

For Projected Coordinate Reference System OSGB 1936 / British National Grid

Parameters:

Ellipsoid:	Airy 1830	$a = 6377563.396$ metres	$1/f = 299.32496$
	then	$e^2 = 0.00667054$	$e'^2 = 0.00671534$
Latitude of natural origin	$\varphi_0$	0°00'00"N	= 0.85521133 rad
Longitude of natural origin	$\lambda_0$	19°00'00"E	= -0.03490659 rad
Scale factor at natural origin	$k_0$	0.9996012717	
False westing	$FW$	0.00	metres
False southing	$FS$	0.00	metres

Forward calculation for:

Latitude	$\varphi$	=	50°30'00.00"S	=	0.88139127 rad
Longitude	$\lambda$	=	00°30'00.00"E	=	0.00872665 rad

first gives :

A	=	0.02775415	C	=	0.00271699
T	=	1.47160434	M	=	5596050.46
v	=	6390266.03	M <sub>0</sub>	=	5429228.60

Then Easting	E	=	577274.99 metres
Northing	N	=	69740.50 metres

Reverse calculation for same easting and northing first gives:

e <sub>1</sub>	=	0.00167322	$\mu_1$	=	0.87939562
M <sub>1</sub>	=	5599036.80	v <sub>1</sub>	=	6390275.88
$\varphi_1$	=	0.88185987	D	=	0.02775243
$\rho_1$	=	6372980.21	C <sub>1</sub>	=	0.00271391
T <sub>1</sub>	=	1.47441726			

Then Latitude	$\varphi$	=	50°30'00.000"S
Longitude	$\lambda$	=	00°30'00.000"E

### 1.3.6 **Oblique Mercator and Hotine Oblique Mercator**

(EPSG dataset coordinate operation method codes 9815 and 9812).

It has been noted that the Transverse Mercator map projection method is employed for the topographical mapping of longitudinal bands of territories, limiting the amount of scale distortion by limiting the extent of the projection either side of the central meridian. Sometimes the shape, general trend and extent of some countries makes it preferable to apply a single zone of the same kind of projection but with its central line aligned with the trend of the territory concerned rather than with a meridian. So, instead of a meridian forming this true scale central line for one of the various forms of Transverse Mercator, or the equator forming the line for the Mercator, a line with a particular azimuth traversing the territory is chosen and the same principles of construction are applied to derive what is now an Oblique Mercator. Such a single zone projection suits areas which have a large extent in one direction but limited extent in the perpendicular direction and whose trend is oblique to the bisecting meridian - such as East and West Malaysia and the Alaskan panhandle. It was originally applied at the beginning of the 20<sup>th</sup> century by Rosenmund to the mapping of Switzerland, and in the 1970's adopted in Hungary. The projection's initial line may be selected as a line with a particular azimuth through a single point, normally at the centre of the mapped area, or as the geodesic line (the shortest line between two points on the ellipsoid) between two selected points.

OGP identifies two forms of the oblique Mercator projection, differentiated only by the point at which false grid coordinates are defined. If the false grid coordinates are defined at the intersection of the initial line and the aposphere, that is at the natural origin of the coordinate system, the map projection method is known as the Hotine Oblique Mercator (EPSG dataset coordinate operation method code 9812). If the false grid coordinates are defined at the projection centre the projection method is known as the Oblique Mercator (EPSG dataset coordinate operation method code 9815).

Hotine projected the ellipsoid conformally onto a sphere of constant total curvature, called the 'aposphere', before projection onto the plane and then rotation of the grid to north. This projection is sometimes referred to as the Rectified Skew Orthomorphic. Formulas, involving hyperbolic functions, were derived by Hotine. Snyder adapted these formulas to use exponential functions, thus avoiding use of Hotine's hyperbolic

expressions. Alternative formulas derived by projecting the ellipsoid onto the ‘conformal’ sphere give identical results within the practical limits of the use of the formulas.

Snyder describes a variation of the Hotine Oblique Mercator where the initial line is defined by two points through which it passes. The latter approach is not currently followed in the EPSG dataset. It has been applied to mapping space imagery or, more frequently, for applying a geographical graticule to the imagery. However, the repeated path of the imaging satellite does not actually follow the centre lines of successive oblique cylindrical projections so a projection was derived whose centre line does follow the satellite path. This is known as the Space Oblique Mercator Projection and although it closely resembles an oblique cylindrical it is not quite conformal and has no application other than for space imagery.

The Oblique Mercator co-ordinate system is defined by:

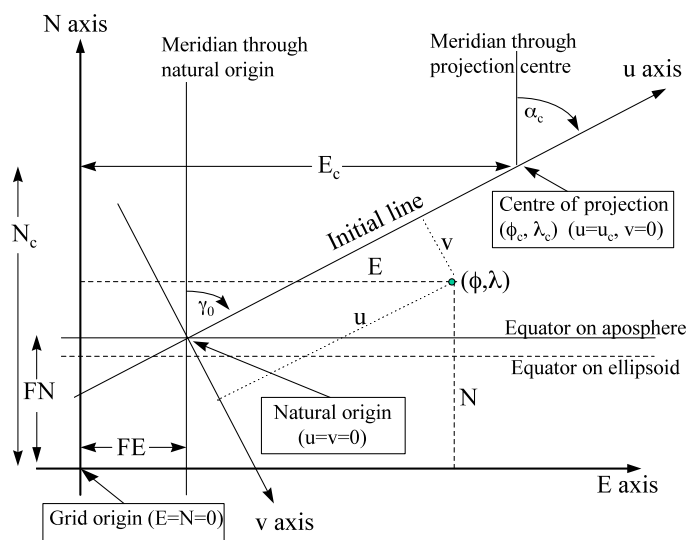


Figure 7. Key Diagram for Oblique Mercator Projection

The initial line central to the map area of given azimuth  $\alpha_c$  passes through a defined centre of the projection  $(\phi_c, \lambda_c)$ . The point where the projection of this line cuts the equator on the aposphere is the origin of the  $(u, v)$  co-ordinate system. The  $u$  axis is along the initial line and the  $v$  axis is perpendicular to ( $90^\circ$  clockwise from) this line.

In applying the formulas for the (Hotine) Oblique Mercator the first set of co-ordinates computed are referred to the  $(u, v)$  co-ordinate axes defined with respect to the initial line. These co-ordinates are then ‘rectified’ to the usual Easting and Northing by applying an orthogonal conversion. Hence the alternative name as the Rectified Skew Orthomorphic. The angle from rectified to skewed grid may be defined such that grid north coincides with true north at the natural origin of the projection, that is where the initial line of the projection intersects equator on the aposphere. In some circumstances, particularly where the projection is used in non-equatorial areas such as the Alaskan panhandle, the angle from rectified to skewed grid is defined to be identical to the azimuth of the initial line at the projection centre; this results in grid and true north coinciding at the projection centre rather than at the natural origin.

To ensure that all co-ordinates in the map area have positive grid values, false co-ordinates are applied. These may be given values  $(E_c, N_c)$  if applied at the projection centre [EPSG dataset Oblique Mercator method] or be applied as false easting (FE) and false northing (FN) at the natural origin [EPSG dataset Hotine Oblique Mercator method].

The formulas can be used for the following cases:

Alaska State Plane Zone 1  
 Hungary EOVS  
 East and West Malaysia Rectified Skew Orthomorphic grids  
 Swiss Cylindrical projection

The Swiss and Hungarian systems are a special case where the azimuth of the line through the projection centre is 90 degrees.

The formulas may also be used as an approximation to the Laborde Grid for Madagascar (see following section).

Specific references for the formulas originally used in the individual cases of these projections are:

- Switzerland: "Die Änderung des Projektionssystems der schweizerischen Landesvermessung." M. Rosenmund 1903. Also "Die projektionen der Schweizerischen Plan und Kartenwerke." J. Bollinger 1967.
- Madagascar: "La nouvelle projection du Service Geographique de Madagascar". J. Laborde 1928.
- Malaysia: Series of Articles in numbers 62-66 of the Empire Survey Review of 1946 and 1947 by M. Hotine.

The defining parameters for the [Hotine] Oblique Mercator projection are:

- $\varphi_C$  = latitude of the projection centre
- $\lambda_C$  = longitude of the projection centre
- $\alpha_C$  = azimuth (true) of the initial line passing through the projection centre
- $\gamma_C$  = angle from the rectified grid to the skew (oblique) grid
- $k_C$  = scale factor on the initial line of the projection

and either

for the Oblique Mercator:

- $E_C$  = False Easting at the centre of projection
- $N_C$  = False Northing at the centre of projection

or for the Hotine Oblique Mercator:

- FE = False Easting at the natural origin
- FN = False Northing at the natural origin

From these defining parameters the following constants for the map projection may be calculated for both the Hotine Oblique Mercator and Oblique Mercator methods:

$$\begin{aligned}
 B &= \{1 + [e^2 \cos^4 \varphi_C / (1 - e^2)]\}^{0.5} \\
 A &= a B k_C (1 - e^2)^{0.5} / (1 - e^2 \sin^2 \varphi_C) \\
 t_0 &= \tan(\pi/4 - \varphi_C / 2) / [(1 - e \sin \varphi_C) / (1 + e \sin \varphi_C)]^{e/2} \\
 D &= B (1 - e^2)^{0.5} / [\cos \varphi_C (1 - e^2 \sin^2 \varphi_C)^{0.5}] \\
 \text{To avoid problems with computation of F, if } D < 1 \text{ make } D^2 &= 1 \\
 F &= D + (D^2 - 1)^{0.5} \cdot \text{SIGN}(\varphi_C) \\
 H &= F t_0^B \\
 G &= (F - 1/F) / 2 \\
 \gamma_0 &= \text{asin}[\sin(\alpha_C) / D] \\
 \lambda_0 &= \lambda_C - [\text{asin}(G \tan \gamma_0)] / B
 \end{aligned}$$

Then for the Oblique Mercator method only, two further constants for the map projection, the ( $u_C$ ,  $v_C$ ) co-ordinates for the centre point ( $\varphi_C$ ,  $\lambda_C$ ), are calculated from:

$$v_C = 0$$

In general

$$u_C = (A / B) \text{atan}[(D^2 - 1)^{0.5} / \cos(\alpha_C)] * \text{SIGN}(\varphi_C)$$

but for the special cases where  $\alpha_c = 90$  degrees (e.g. Hungary, Switzerland) then

$$u_c = A (\lambda_c - \lambda_o)$$

**Forward case:** To compute (E,N) from a given ( $\varphi, \lambda$ ), for both the Hotine Oblique Mercator method and the Oblique Mercator method:

$$\begin{aligned} t &= \tan(\pi / 4 - \varphi / 2) / [(1 - e \sin \varphi) / (1 + e \sin \varphi)]^{e/2} \\ Q &= H / t^B \\ S &= (Q - 1/Q) / 2 \\ T &= (Q + 1/Q) / 2 \\ V &= \sin(B (\lambda - \lambda_o)) \\ U &= (-V \cos(\gamma_o) + S \sin(\gamma_o)) / T \\ v &= A \ln[(1 - U) / (1 + U)] / (2 B) \end{aligned}$$

Then either

(a) for the Hotine Oblique Mercator (where the FE and FN values have been specified with respect to the natural origin of the (u, v) axes):

$$u = A \operatorname{atan}\{(S \cos \gamma_o + V \sin \gamma_o) / \cos[B (\lambda - \lambda_o)]\} / B$$

The rectified skew co-ordinates are then derived from:

$$\begin{aligned} E &= v \cos(\gamma_c) + u \sin(\gamma_c) + FE \\ N &= u \cos(\gamma_c) - v \sin(\gamma_c) + FN \end{aligned}$$

or

(b) for the Oblique Mercator (where the false easting and northing values ( $E_c, N_c$ ) have been specified with respect to the centre of the projection ( $\varphi_c, \lambda_c$ ) then :

$$u = (A \operatorname{atan}\{(S \cos \gamma_o + V \sin \gamma_o) / \cos[B (\lambda - \lambda_o)]\} / B) - (\operatorname{ABS}(u_c) * \operatorname{SIGN}(\varphi_c))$$

The rectified skew co-ordinates are then derived from:

$$\begin{aligned} E &= v \cos(\gamma_c) + u \sin(\gamma_c) + E_c \\ N &= u \cos(\gamma_c) - v \sin(\gamma_c) + N_c \end{aligned}$$

**Reverse case:** To compute ( $\varphi, \lambda$ ) from a given (E,N) :

For the Hotine Oblique Mercator:

$$\begin{aligned} v' &= (E - FE) \cos(\gamma_c) - (N - FN) \sin(\gamma_c) \\ u' &= (N - FN) \cos(\gamma_c) + (E - FE) \sin(\gamma_c) \end{aligned}$$

or for the Oblique Mercator:

$$\begin{aligned} v' &= (E - E_c) \cos(\gamma_c) - (N - N_c) \sin(\gamma_c) \\ u' &= (N - N_c) \cos(\gamma_c) + (E - E_c) \sin(\gamma_c) + (\operatorname{ABS}(u_c) * \operatorname{SIGN}(\varphi_c)) \end{aligned}$$

then for both cases:

$$\begin{aligned} Q' &= e^{-(B v' / A)} \text{ where } e \text{ is the base of natural logarithms.} \\ S' &= (Q' - 1 / Q') / 2 \\ T' &= (Q' + 1 / Q') / 2 \\ V' &= \sin(B u' / A) \\ U' &= (V' \cos(\gamma_o) + S' \sin(\gamma_o)) / T' \\ t' &= \{H / [(1 + U') / (1 - U')]\}^{0.5} \}^{1/B} \end{aligned}$$

$$\chi = \pi / 2 - 2 \operatorname{atan}(t')$$

$$\varphi = \chi + \sin(2\chi) (e^2 / 2 + 5 e^4 / 24 + e^6 / 12 + 13 e^8 / 360) + \sin(4\chi) (7 e^4 / 48 + 29 e^6 / 240 + 811 e^8 / 11520) + \sin(6\chi) (7 e^6 / 120 + 81 e^8 / 1120) + \sin(8\chi) (4279 e^8 / 161280)$$

$$\lambda = \lambda_0 - \operatorname{atan} [(S' \cos \gamma_0 - V' \sin \gamma_0) / \cos(B u' / A)] / B$$

**Examples:**

For Projected Coordinate Reference System Timbalai 1948 / R.S.O. Borneo (m) using the Oblique Mercator method: (EPSG dataset coordinate operation method code 9815).

Parameters:

Ellipsoid: Everest 1830 (1967 Definition)    a = 6377298.556 metres    1/f = 300.8017  
 then e = 0.081472981    e<sup>2</sup> = 0.006637847

Latitude of projection centre	$\varphi_C$	4°00'00"N	=	0.069813170 rad
Longitude of projection centre	$\lambda_C$	115°00'00"E	=	2.007128640 rad
Azimuth of initial line	$\alpha_C$	53°18'56.9537"	=	0.930536611 rad
Angle from Rectified to Skew Grid	$\gamma_C$	53°07'48.3685"	=	0.927295218 rad
Scale factor on initial line	$k_C$	0.99984		
Easting at projection centre	$E_C$	590476.87	metres	
Northings at projection centre	$N_C$	442857.65	metres	

Constants for the map projection:

B	=	1.003303209	F	=	1.072121256
A	=	6376278.686	H	=	1.000002991
t <sub>0</sub>	=	0.932946976	$\gamma_0$	=	0.927295218
D	=	1.002425787	$\lambda_0$	=	1.914373469
D <sup>2</sup>	=	1.004857458			
u <sub>c</sub>	=	738096.09	v <sub>c</sub>	=	0.00

Forward calculation for:

Latitude	$\varphi$	=	5°23'14.1129"N	=	0.094025313 rad
Longitude	$\lambda$	=	115°48'19.8196"E	=	2.021187362 rad

first gives :

t	=	0.910700729	Q	=	1.098398182
S	=	0.093990763	T	=	1.004407419
V	=	0.106961709	U	=	0.010967247
v	=	-69702.787	u	=	163238.163

Then Easting	E	=	679245.73 metres
Northing	N	=	596562.78 metres

Reverse calculation for same easting and northing first gives:

v'	=	-69702.787	u'	=	901334.257
Q'	=	1.011028053			
S'	=	0.010967907	T'	=	1.000060146
V'	=	0.141349378	U'	=	0.093578324
t'	=	0.910700729	$\chi$	=	0.093404829

Then Latitude	$\varphi$	=	5°23'14.113"N
---------------	-----------	---	---------------

$$\text{Longitude } \lambda = 115^{\circ}48'19.820''\text{E}$$

If the same projection is defined using the Hotine Oblique Mercator method then:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{False easting } FE &= 0.0 \text{ metres} \\ \text{False northing } FN &= 0.0 \text{ metres} \\ \text{Then } u &= 901334.257 \end{aligned}$$

and all other values are as for the Oblique Mercator method.

### 1.3.6.1 Laborde projection for Madagascar (EPSG dataset coordinate operation method code 9813).

For the mapping of Madagascar, Laborde developed a grid based on an oblique cylindrical conformal projection similar to the Oblique Mercator. Like Hotine's development for the Oblique Mercator, Laborde used a triple projection technique to map the ellipsoid to the plane. But in the Laborde projection the rotation to north is made on the intermediate conformal sphere rather than in the projection plane. Within 450 kilometres of the projection origin near Antananarivo, Laborde's formulas can be approximated to better than 2cm by the Oblique Mercator method described above, which is satisfactory for most purposes. However, beyond these limits, particularly in the direction along the initial line, results from the Oblique Mercator formulae diverge rapidly from those given by Laborde's formulas, so that at 600 kilometres from the origin along the initial line the Oblique Mercator approximates Laborde's formulas to no better than 1 metre.

The defining parameters for the Laborde Madagascar projection are:

$$\begin{aligned} \varphi_C &= \text{latitude of the projection centre} \\ \lambda_C &= \text{longitude of the projection centre} \\ \alpha_C &= \text{azimuth (true) of the initial line passing through the projection centre} \\ k_C &= \text{scale factor on the initial line of the projection} \\ FE &= \text{False Easting at the natural origin} \\ FN &= \text{False Northing at the natural origin} \end{aligned}$$

(Note: if the Oblique Mercator method is used as an approximation to the Laborde Madagascar, the additional parameter required by that method, the angle from the rectified grid to the skew (oblique) grid  $\gamma_C$ , takes the same value as the azimuth of the initial line passing through the projection centre, i.e.  $\gamma_C = \alpha_C$ )

All angular units should be converted to radians prior to use and all longitudes reduced to the Paris Meridan using the Paris Longitude of 2.5969212963 grads (2° 20' 14.025"E) east of Greenwich.

From these defining parameters the following constants for the map projection may be calculated:

$$\begin{aligned} B &= \{1 + [e^2 \cos^4 \varphi_C] / (1 - e^2)\}^{0.5} \\ \varphi_s &= \text{asin}[\sin \varphi_C / B] \\ R &= a \cdot k_C \cdot \{(1 - e^2)^{0.5} / [1 - e^2 \sin^2 \varphi_C]\} \\ C &= \ln[\tan(\pi/4 + \varphi_s / 2)] - B \cdot \ln\{\tan(\pi/4 + \varphi_C / 2) \cdot [(1 - e \sin \varphi_C) / (1 + e \sin \varphi_C)]^{(e/2)}\} \end{aligned}$$

**Forward case:** To compute (E,N) from a given ( $\varphi, \lambda$ )

$$\begin{aligned} L &= B \cdot (\lambda - \lambda_C) \\ q &= C + B \cdot \ln\{\tan(\pi/4 + \varphi/2) \cdot [(1 - e \sin \varphi) / (1 + e \sin \varphi)]^{(e/2)}\} \\ P &= 2 \cdot \text{atan}(e^q) - \pi/2 \quad \text{where } e \text{ is the base of natural logarithms.} \\ U &= \cos P \cdot \cos L \cdot \cos \varphi_s + \sin P \cdot \sin \varphi_s \\ V &= \cos P \cdot \cos L \cdot \sin \varphi_s - \sin P \cdot \cos \varphi_s \\ W &= \cos P \cdot \sin L \\ d &= (U^2 + V^2)^{0.5} \\ \text{if } d \neq 0 &\text{ then } L' = 2 \cdot \text{atan}(V/(U+d)) \text{ and } P' = \text{atan}(W/d) \\ \text{if } d = 0 &\text{ then } L' = 0 \text{ and } P' = \text{sign}(W) \cdot \pi/2 \end{aligned}$$

$$H = -L' + i \cdot \ln(\tan(\pi/4 + P'/2)) \quad \text{where } i^2 = -1$$

$$G = (1 - \cos(2 \cdot \alpha_C) + i \cdot \sin(2 \cdot \alpha_C))/12$$

$$E = E_C + R \cdot \text{IMAGINARY}(H + G \cdot H^3)$$

$$N = N_C + R \cdot \text{REAL}(H + G \cdot H^3)$$

**Reverse case:** To compute  $(\varphi, \lambda)$  from a given  $(E, N)$ :

$$G = (1 - \cos(2 \cdot \alpha_C) + i \cdot \sin(2 \cdot \alpha_C))/12 \quad \text{where } i^2 = -1$$

To solve for Latitude and Longitude, a re-iterative solution is required, where the first two elements are

$$H_0 = (N - FN)/R + i \cdot (E - FE)/R \quad \text{ie } k = 0$$

$$H_1 = H_0 / (H_0 + G \cdot H_0^3), \quad \text{i.e. } k = 1,$$

and in subsequent reiterations,  $k$  increments by 1

$$H_{k+1} = (H_0 + 2 \cdot G \cdot H_k^3) / (3 \cdot G \cdot H_k^2 + 1)$$

Re-iterate until  $\text{ABSOLUTE}(\text{REAL}([H_0 - H_k - G \cdot H_k^3])) < 1E-11$

$$L' = -1 \cdot \text{REAL}(H_k)$$

$$P' = 2 \cdot \text{atan}(e^{\text{IMAGINARY}(H_k)}) - \pi/2 \quad \text{where } e \text{ is the base of natural logarithms.}$$

$$U' = \cos P' \cdot \cos L' \cdot \cos \varphi_s + \cos P' \cdot \sin L' \cdot \sin \varphi_s$$

$$V' = \sin P'$$

$$W' = \cos P' \cdot \cos L' \cdot \sin \varphi_s - \cos P' \cdot \sin L' \cdot \cos \varphi_s$$

$$d = (U'^2 + V'^2)^{0.5}$$

$$\text{if } d <> 0 \text{ then } L = 2 \cdot \text{atan}[V' / (U' + d)] \text{ and } P = \text{atan}(W' / d)$$

$$\text{if } d = 0 \text{ then } L = 0 \text{ and } P = \text{SIGN}(W') \cdot \pi/2$$

$$\lambda = \lambda_C + (L/B)$$

$$q' = \{\ln[\tan(\pi/4 + P'/2)] - C\} / B$$

The final solution for latitude requires a second re-iterative process, where the first element is

$$\varphi'_0 = 2 \cdot \text{atan}(e^{q'}) - \pi/2 \quad \text{where } e \text{ is the base of natural logarithms.}$$

And the subsequent elements are

$$\varphi'_k = 2 \cdot \text{atan}\left\{\frac{\{1 + e \cdot \sin[\varphi'_{k-1}]\}}{\{1 - e \cdot \sin[\varphi'_{k-1}]\}}\right\}^{(e/2)} \cdot e^{q'} - \pi/2 \quad \text{for } k = 1 \rightarrow$$

Iterate until  $\text{ABSOLUTE}(\varphi'_k - \varphi'_{k-1}) < 1E-11$

$$\varphi = \varphi'_k$$

### Example:

For Projected Coordinate Reference System Tananarive (Paris) / Laborde Grid.

Parameters:

Ellipsoid:	International 1924	$a = 6378388$ metres	$1/f = 297$
		then $e = 0.081991890$	$e^2 = 0.006722670$

Latitude of projection centre	$\varphi_C$	21 grads S	= -0.329867229 rad
Longitude of projection centre	$\lambda_C$	49 grads E of Paris	= 51.5969213 grads E of Greenwich
			= 0.810482544 rad
Azimuth of initial line	$\alpha_C$	21 grads	= 0.329867229 rad
Scale factor on initial line	$k_C$	0.9995	
Easting at projection centre	$E_C$	400000	metres
Northings at projection centre	$N_C$	800000	metres

Constants for the map projection:

$$B = 1.002707541 \quad \varphi_s = -0.328942879$$



$$R = 6358218.319 \qquad C = -0.0002973474$$

Forward calculation for:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Latitude } \varphi &= 16^{\circ}11'23.280''\text{S} \\ &= 17.9886666667 \text{ grads S} &= -0.282565315 \text{ rad} \\ \text{Longitude } \lambda &= 44^{\circ}27'27.260''\text{E of Greenwich} \\ &= 46.800381173 \text{ grads E of Paris} &= 0.735138668 \text{ rad} \end{aligned}$$

first gives :

$$\begin{aligned} L &= -0.034645081 & q &= -0.285595283 & P &= -0.281790207 \\ U &= 0.998343010 & V &= -0.046948995 & W &= -0.033271994 \\ d &= 0.999446334 & L' &= -0.046992297 & P' &= -0.033278135 \\ H &= 0.046992297 - & G &= 0.017487082 + \\ &0.033284279i & &0.051075588i \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Then Easting } E &= 188333.848 \text{ metres} \\ \text{Northing } N &= 1098841.091 \text{ metres} \end{aligned}$$

Reverse calculation for same easting and northing first gives:

$$\begin{aligned} G &= 0.017487082 + & H_0 &= 0.047000760 - & H_1 &= 0.999820949 - \\ &0.051075588i & &0.033290167i & &0.000001503i \\ H_k &= 0.046992297 - & L' &= -0.046992297 & P' &= -0.033278136 \\ &0.033284279i & & & & \\ U' &= 0.959982752 & V' &= -0.033271994 & W' &= -0.278075693 \\ d &= 0.960559165 & L &= -0.3464508142 & P &= -0.281790207 \\ q' &= -0.284527565 & \varphi'_0 &= -0.280764449 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Then Latitude } \varphi &= -0.282565315 \text{ rad} &= 17.9886666667 \text{ grads S} \\ & &= 16^{\circ}11'23.280''\text{S} \\ \text{Longitude } \lambda &= 0.735138668 \text{ rad} &= 46.8003811733 \text{ grads East of Paris} \\ & &= 44^{\circ}27'27.260''\text{E of Greenwich} \end{aligned}$$

Comparing the Oblique Mercator method as an approximation of the full Laborde formula:

Latitude	Greenwich Longitude	<u>Using Laborde formula</u>		<u>Using Oblique Mercator</u>		dX (m)	dY (m)
		Northing X	Easting Y	Northing X	Easting Y		
18°54'S	47°30'E	799665.521	511921.054	799665.520	511921.054	0.00	0.00
16°12'S	44°24'E	1097651.447	182184.982	1097651.426	182184.985	0.02	0.00
25°40'S	45°18'E	50636.222	285294.334	50636.850	285294.788	0.63	0.45
12°00'S	49°12'E	1561109.146	701354.056	1561109.350	701352.935	0.20	1.12

### 1.3.7 Stereographic

The Stereographic projection may be imagined to be a projection of the earth's surface onto a plane in contact with the earth at a single tangent point from a projection point at the opposite end of the diameter through that tangent point.

This projection is best known in its polar form and is frequently used for mapping polar areas where it complements the Universal Transverse Mercator used for lower latitudes. Its spherical form has also been widely used by the US Geological Survey for planetary mapping and the mapping at small scale of continental hydrocarbon provinces. In its transverse or oblique ellipsoidal forms it is useful for mapping

limited areas centred on the point where the plane of the projection is regarded as tangential to the ellipsoid, e.g. the Netherlands. The tangent point is the origin of the projected coordinate system and the meridian through it is regarded as the central meridian. In order to reduce the scale error at the extremities of the projection area it is usual to introduce a scale factor of less than unity at the origin such that a unitary scale factor applies on a near circle centred at the origin and some distance from it.

The coordinate conversion from geographic to projected coordinates is executed via the distance and azimuth of the point from the centre point or origin. For a sphere the formulas are relatively simple. For the ellipsoid the parameters defining the conformal sphere at the tangent point as origin are first derived. The conformal latitudes and longitudes are substituted for the geodetic latitudes and longitudes of the spherical formulas for the origin and the point.

An alternative approach is given by Snyder, where, instead of defining a single conformal sphere at the origin point, the conformal latitude at each point on the ellipsoid is computed. The conformal longitude is then always equivalent to the geodetic longitude. This approach is a valid alternative to that given here, but gives slightly different results away from the origin point. The USGS formula is therefore considered by OGP to be a different coordinate operation method to that described here.

### **1.3.7.1 Oblique and Equatorial Stereographic cases**

(EPSG dataset coordinate operation method code 9809)

Given the geodetic origin of the projection at the tangent point  $(\varphi_0, \lambda_0)$ , the parameters defining the conformal sphere are:

$$\begin{aligned} R &= (\rho_0 \nu_0)^{0.5} \\ n &= \{1 + [(e^2 \cos^4 \varphi_0) / (1 - e^2)]\}^{0.5} \\ c &= (n + \sin \varphi_0) (1 - \sin \chi_0) / [(n - \sin \varphi_0) (1 + \sin \chi_0)] \end{aligned}$$

where:  $\sin \chi_0 = (w_1 - 1) / (w_1 + 1)$

$$w_1 = [S_1 (S_2)^e]^n$$

$$S_1 = (1 + \sin \varphi_0) / (1 - \sin \varphi_0)$$

$$S_2 = (1 - e \sin \varphi_0) / (1 + e \sin \varphi_0)$$

The conformal latitude and longitude of the origin  $(\chi_0, \Lambda_0)$  are then computed from :

$$\chi_0 = \sin^{-1} [(w_2 - 1) / (w_2 + 1)]$$

$$\text{where } S_1 \text{ and } S_2 \text{ are as above and } w_2 = c [S_1 (S_2)^e]^n = c w_1$$

$$\Lambda_0 = \lambda_0$$

For any point with geodetic coordinates  $(\varphi, \lambda)$  the equivalent conformal latitude and longitude  $(\chi, \Lambda)$  are then computed from

$$\Lambda = n(\lambda - \Lambda_0) + \Lambda_0$$

and

$$\chi = \sin^{-1} [(w - 1) / (w + 1)]$$

where  $w = c [S_a (S_b)^e]^n$

$$S_a = (1 + \sin \varphi) / (1 - \sin \varphi)$$

$$S_b = (1 - e \sin \varphi) / (1 + e \sin \varphi)$$

Then

$$E = FE + 2 R k_0 \cos \chi \sin(\Lambda - \Lambda_0) / B$$

and

$$N = FN + 2 R k_0 [\sin \chi \cos \chi_0 - \cos \chi \sin \chi_0 \cos(\Lambda - \Lambda_0)] / B$$

where  $B = [1 + \sin \chi \sin \chi_0 + \cos \chi \cos \chi_0 \cos(\Lambda - \Lambda_0)]$

The reverse formulas to compute the geodetic coordinates from the grid coordinates involves computing the conformal values, then the isometric latitude and finally the geodetic values.

The parameters of the conformal sphere and conformal latitude and longitude at the origin are computed as above. Then for any point with Stereographic grid coordinates (E,N) :

$$\chi = \chi_0 + 2 \tan^{-1} \{[(N - FN) - (E - FE) \tan(j/2)] / (2 R k_0)\}$$

$$\Lambda = j + 2 i + \Lambda_0$$

where  $g = 2 R k_0 \tan(\pi/4 - \chi_0/2)$

$$h = 4 R k_0 \tan \chi_0 + g$$

$$i = \tan^{-1} \{(E - FE) / [h + (N - FN)]\}$$

$$j = \tan^{-1} \{(E - FE) / [g - (N - FN)]\} - i$$

Geodetic longitude  $\lambda = (\Lambda - \Lambda_0) / n + \Lambda_0$

Isometric latitude  $\psi = 0.5 \ln \{(1 + \sin \chi) / [c(1 - \sin \chi)]\} / n$

First approximation  $\varphi_1 = 2 \tan^{-1} e^\Psi - \pi / 2$  where  $e$ =base of natural logarithms.

$$\psi_1 = \text{isometric latitude at } \varphi_1$$

where  $\psi_1 = \ln \{[\tan(\varphi_1/2 + \pi/4)] [(1 - e \sin \varphi_1)/(1 + e \sin \varphi_1)]^{(e/2)}\}$

Then iterate  $\varphi_{i+1} = \varphi_i - (\psi_i - \psi) \cos \varphi_i (1 - e^2 \sin^2 \varphi_i) / (1 - e^2)$

until the change in  $\varphi$  is sufficiently small.

If the projection is the equatorial case,  $\varphi_0$  and  $\chi_0$  will be zero degrees and the formulas are simplified as a result, but the above formulas remain valid.

For the polar version,  $\varphi_0$  and  $\chi_0$  will be 90 degrees and the formulas become indeterminate. See below for formulas for the polar case.

For stereographic projections centred on points in the southern hemisphere, the signs of E, N,  $\lambda_0$  and  $\lambda$  must be reversed to be used in the equations and  $\varphi$  will be negative anyway as a southerly latitude.

**Example:**

For Projected Coordinate Reference System: Amersfoort / RD New

Parameters:

Ellipsoid:	Bessel 1841	a = 6377397.155 metres	1/f = 299.15281
	then	e = 0.08169683	
Latitude of natural origin	$\varphi_0$	52°09'22.178"N	= 0.910296727 rad
Longitude of natural origin	$\lambda_0$	5°23'15.500"E	= 0.094032038 rad
Scale factor at natural origin	$k_0$	0.9999079	
False easting	FE	155000.00	metres
False northing	FN	463000.00	metres

Forward calculation for:

Latitude	$\varphi$	= 53°N	= 0.925024504 rad
Longitude	$\lambda$	= 6°E	= 0.104719755 rad

first gives the conformal sphere constants:

$\rho_0 = 6374588.71$	$\nu_0 = 6390710.613$	
$R = 6382644.571$	$n = 1.000475857$	$c = 1.007576465$

where	$S_1 = 8.509582274$	$S_2 = 0.878790173$	$w_1 = 8.428769183$
	$\sin \chi_0 = 0.787883237$		

$w_2 = 8.492629457$	$\chi_0 = 0.909684757$	$\Lambda_0 = \lambda_0 = 0.094032038$ rad
---------------------	------------------------	---

For the point ( $\varphi, \lambda$ )	$\chi = 0.924394997$	$\Lambda = 0.104724841$ rad
--------------------------------------	----------------------	-----------------------------

hence	$B = 1.999870665$	
and	$E = 196105.283$ m	$N = 557057.739$ m

Reverse calculation for the same Easting and Northing (196105.28E, 557057.74N) first gives:

$g = 4379954.188$	$h = 37197327.960$	$i = 0.001102255$	$j = 0.008488122$
-------------------	--------------------	-------------------	-------------------

then	$\Lambda = 0.10472467$	whence	$\lambda = 0.104719584$ rad = 6°E
------	------------------------	--------	-----------------------------------

Also	$\chi = 0.924394767$	and	$\psi = 1.089495123$
Then	$\varphi_1 = 0.921804948$		$\psi_1 = 1.084170164$
	$\varphi_2 = 0.925031162$		$\psi_2 = 1.089506925$
	$\varphi_3 = 0.925024504$		$\psi_3 = 1.089495505$
	$\varphi_4 = 0.925024504$		

Then	Latitude	$\varphi$	= 53°00'00.000"N
	Longitude	$\lambda$	= 6°00'00.000"E

**1.3.7.2 Polar Stereographic**

For the polar stereographic projection, three variants are recognised, differentiated by their defining parameters. In the basic variant (**variant A**) the latitude of origin is either the north or the south pole, at which is defined a scale factor at the natural origin, the meridian along which the northing axis increments

and along which intersecting parallels increment *towards the north pole* (the longitude of origin), and false grid coordinates. In **variant B** instead of the scale factor at the pole being defined, the (non-polar) latitude at which the scale is unity – the standard parallel – is defined. In **variant C** the latitude of a standard parallel along which the scale is unity is defined; the intersection of this parallel with the longitude of origin is the false origin, at which grid coordinate values are defined.

<u>Parameter</u>	<u>Method</u>		
	<u>Variant A</u> (note 1)	<u>Variant B</u> (note 2)	<u>Variant C</u> (note 2)
Latitude of natural origin ( $\varphi_0$ )			
Latitude of standard parallel ( $\varphi_F$ )		x	x
Longitude of origin ( $\lambda_0$ )	x	x	x
Scale at natural origin ( $k_0$ )	x		
False easting (easting at natural origin = pole) (FE)	x	x	
False northing (northing at natural origin = pole) (FN)	x	x	
Easting at false origin ( $E_F$ )			x
Northing at false origin ( $N_F$ )			x

In all three variants the formulae for the **south pole case** are straightforward but some require modification for the **north pole case** to allow the longitude of origin going towards (as opposed to away from) the natural origin and for the anticlockwise increase in longitude value when viewed from the north pole (see figure 8). Several equations are common between the variants and cases.

Notes:

1. In variant A the parameter *Latitude of natural origin* is used only to identify which hemisphere case is required. The only valid entries are  $\pm 90^\circ$  or equivalent in alternative angle units.
2. For variants B and C, whilst it is mathematically possible for the standard parallel to be in the opposite hemisphere to the pole at which is the projection natural origin, such an arrangement would be unsatisfactory from a cartographic perspective as the rate of change of scale would be excessive in the area of interest. The EPSG dataset therefore excludes the hemisphere of pole as a defining parameter for these variants. In the formulas that follow for these variants B and C, the hemisphere of pole is taken to be that of the hemisphere of the standard parallel.

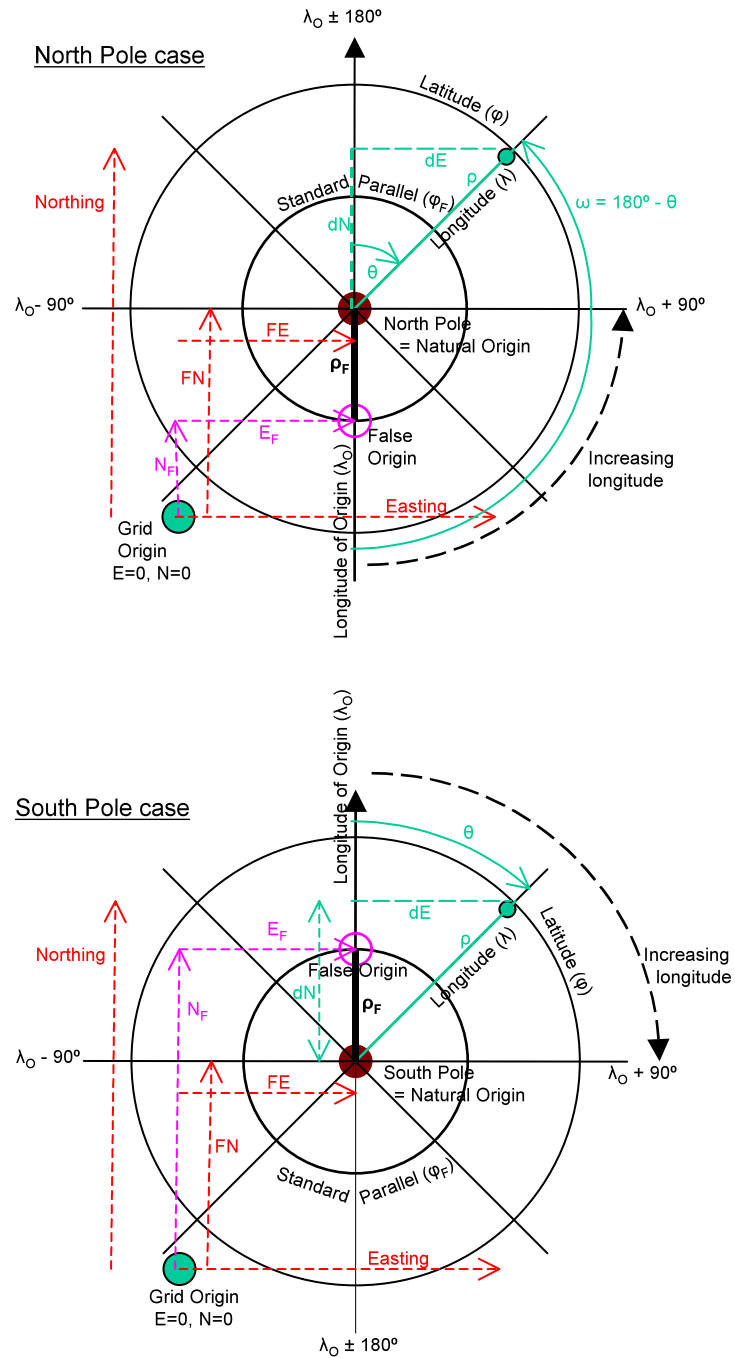


Figure 8. Key Diagram for Stereographic Projection

Polar Stereographic (Variant A) (EPSG dataset coordinate operation method code 9810).

For the forward conversion from latitude and longitude, for the south pole case

$$dE = \rho \sin(\theta)$$

and

$$dN = \rho \cos(\theta)$$

where  $\theta = (\lambda - \lambda_0)$

Then

$$E = dE + FE = FE + \rho \sin(\lambda - \lambda_0)$$

$$N = dN + FN = FN + \rho \cos(\lambda - \lambda_0)$$

where

$$t = \tan(\pi/4 + \varphi/2) / \{[(1 + e \sin\varphi) / (1 - e \sin\varphi)]^{(e/2)}\}$$

$$\rho = 2 a k_0 t / \{(1+e)^{(1+e)}(1-e)^{(1-e)}\}^{0.5}$$

For the north pole case,

$$dE = \rho \sin(\theta) = \rho \sin(\omega)$$

$$dN = \rho \cos(\theta) = -\rho \cos(\omega)$$

where, as shown in figure 8,  $\omega$  = longitude  $\lambda$  measured anticlockwise in the projection plane.

$\rho$  and  $E$  are found as for the south pole case but

$$t = \tan(\pi/4 - \varphi/2) \{[(1 + e \sin\varphi) / (1 - e \sin\varphi)]^{(e/2)}\}$$

$$N = FN - \rho \cos(\lambda - \lambda_0)$$

For the reverse conversion from easting and northing to latitude and longitude,

$$\varphi = \chi + (e^2/2 + 5e^4/24 + e^6/12 + 13e^8/360) \sin(2\chi)$$

$$+ (7e^4/48 + 29e^6/240 + 811e^8/11520) \sin(4\chi)$$

$$+ (7e^6/120 + 81e^8/1120) \sin(6\chi) + (4279e^8/161280) \sin(8\chi)$$

where  $\rho' = [(E - FE)^2 + (N - FN)^2]^{0.5}$

$$t' = \rho' \{[(1+e)^{(1+e)}(1-e)^{(1-e)}]^{0.5}\} / 2 a k_0$$

and for the south pole case

$$\chi = 2 \operatorname{atan}(t') - \pi/2$$

but for the north pole case

$$\chi = \pi/2 - 2 \operatorname{atan} t'$$

Then for both north and south cases if  $E = FE$ ,  $\lambda = \lambda_0$

else for the south pole case

$$\lambda = \lambda_0 + \operatorname{atan} [(E - FE) / (N - FN)]$$

and for the north pole case

$$\lambda = \lambda_0 + \operatorname{atan} [(E - FE) / -(N - FN)] = \lambda_0 + \operatorname{atan} [(E - FE) / (FN - N)]$$

### Example:

For Projected Coordinate Reference System: WGS 84 / UPS North

Parameters:

Ellipsoid:	WGS 84	$a = 6378137.0$ metres	$1/f = 298.2572236$
	then	$e = 0.081819191$	

Latitude of natural origin	$\varphi_0$	$90^\circ 00' 00.000''$ N	=	$1.570796327$ rad
Longitude of natural origin	$\lambda_0$	$0^\circ 00' 00.000''$ E	=	$0.0$ rad
Scale factor at natural origin	$k_0$	$0.994$		
False easting	FE	$2000000.00$	metres	
False northing	FN	$2000000.00$	metres	

Forward calculation for:

Latitude	$\varphi$	=	$73^\circ$ N	=	$1.274090354$ rad
Longitude	$\lambda$	=	$44^\circ$ E	=	$0.767944871$ rad

$$t = 0.150412808$$

$$\rho = 1900814.564$$

whence

$$E = 3320416.75 \text{ m}$$

$$N = 632668.43 \text{ m}$$

Reverse calculation for the same Easting and Northing (3320416.75 E, 632668.43 N) first gives:

$$\begin{aligned}\rho' &= 1900814.566 \\ t' &= 0.150412808 \\ \chi &= 1.2722090\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{array}{llll} \text{Then} & \text{Latitude} & \varphi & = & 73^{\circ}00'00.000''\text{N} \\ & \text{Longitude} & \lambda & = & 44^{\circ}00'00.000''\text{E} \end{array}$$

Polar Stereographic (Variant B) (EPSG dataset coordinate operation method code 9829).

For the forward conversion from latitude and longitude:

for the south pole case

$$\begin{aligned}t_F &= \tan(\pi/4 + \varphi_F/2) / \{[(1 + e \sin\varphi_F) / (1 - e \sin\varphi_F)]^{(e/2)}\} \\ m_F &= \cos \varphi_F / (1 - e^2 \sin^2 \varphi_F)^{0.5} \\ k_O &= m_F \{[(1+e)^{(1+e)} (1-e)^{(1-e)}]^{0.5}\} / (2*t_F)\end{aligned}$$

then t,  $\rho$ , E and N are found as in the south pole case of variant A.

For the north pole case,  $m_F$  and  $k_O$  are found as for the south pole case above, but

$$t_F = \tan(\pi/4 - \varphi_F/2) \{[(1 + e \sin\varphi_F) / (1 - e \sin\varphi_F)]^{(e/2)}\}$$

Then t,  $\rho$ , E and N are found as in variant A.

For the reverse conversion from easting and northing to latitude and longitude, first  $k_O$  is found from  $m_F$  and  $t_F$  as in the forward conversion above, then  $\varphi$  and  $\lambda$  are found as for variant A.

### Example:

For Projected Coordinate Reference System: WGS 84 / Australian Antarctic Polar Stereographic

Parameters:

$$\begin{array}{llll} \text{Ellipsoid:} & \text{WGS 84} & a = 6378137.0 \text{ metres} & 1/f = 298.2572236 \\ & & \text{then } e = 0.081819191 & \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{llll} \text{Latitude of standard parallel} & \varphi_F & 71^{\circ}00'00.000''\text{S} & = & -1.239183769 \text{ rad} \\ \text{Longitude of origin} & \lambda_O & 70^{\circ}00'00.000''\text{E} & = & 1.221730476 \text{ rad} \\ \text{False easting} & \text{FE} & 6000000.00 & \text{metres} & \\ \text{False northing} & \text{FN} & 6000000.00 & \text{metres} & \end{array}$$

Forward calculation for:

$$\begin{array}{llll} \text{Latitude} & \varphi & = & 75^{\circ}00'00.000''\text{S} & = & -1.308996939 \text{ rad} \\ \text{Longitude} & \lambda & = & 120^{\circ}00'00.000''\text{E} & = & 2.094395102 \text{ rad} \end{array}$$

$$\begin{aligned}t_F &= 0.168407325 \\ m_F &= 0.326546781 \\ k_O &= 0.97276901 \\ t &= 0.132508348 \\ \rho &= 1638783.238\end{aligned}$$

whence

$$\begin{aligned}E &= 7255380.79 \text{ m} \\ N &= 7053389.56 \text{ m}\end{aligned}$$

Reverse calculation for the same Easting and Northing (7255380.79 E, 7053389.56 N) first gives:

$$t_F = 0.168407325 \quad m_F = 0.326546781 \quad \text{and} \quad k_O = 0.97276901$$



then  $\rho' = 1638783.236$        $t' = 0.132508347$        $\chi = -1.3073146$

Then    Latitude       $\varphi = 75^{\circ}00'00.000''S$   
          Longitude       $\lambda = 120^{\circ}00'00.000''E$

Polar Stereographic (Variant C) (EPSG dataset coordinate operation method code 9830).

For the forward conversion from latitude and longitude, for the south pole case

$$E = E_F + \rho \sin(\lambda - \lambda_O)$$

$$N = N_F - \rho_F + \rho \cos(\lambda - \lambda_O)$$

where

$$m_F \text{ is found as in variant B} = \cos \varphi_F / (1 - e^2 \sin^2 \varphi_F)^{0.5}$$

$$t_F \text{ is found as in variant B} = \tan(\pi/4 + \varphi_F/2) / \{[(1 + e \sin \varphi_F) / (1 - e \sin \varphi_F)]^{(e/2)}\}$$

$$t \text{ is found as in variants A and B} = \tan(\pi/4 + \varphi/2) / \{[(1 + e \sin \varphi) / (1 - e \sin \varphi)]^{(e/2)}\}$$

$$\rho_F = a m_F$$

$$\rho = \rho_F t / t_F$$

For the north pole case,  $m_F$ ,  $\rho_F$ ,  $\rho$  and  $E$  are found as for the south pole case but

$$t_F \text{ is found as in variant B} = \tan(\pi/4 - \varphi_F/2) / \{[(1 + e \sin \varphi_F) / (1 - e \sin \varphi_F)]^{(e/2)}\}$$

$$t \text{ is found as in variants A and B} = \tan(\pi/4 - \varphi/2) / \{[(1 + e \sin \varphi) / (1 - e \sin \varphi)]^{(e/2)}\}$$

$$N = N_F + \rho_F - \rho \cos(\lambda - \lambda_O)$$

For the reverse conversion from easting and northing to latitude and longitude,

$$\varphi = \chi + (e^2/2 + 5e^4/24 + e^6/12 + 13e^8/360) \sin(2\chi)$$

$$+ (7e^4/48 + 29e^6/240 + 811e^8/11520) \sin(4\chi)$$

$$+ (7e^6/120 + 81e^8/1120) \sin(6\chi) + (4279e^8/161280) \sin(8\chi)$$

(as for variants A and B)

where for the south pole case

$$\rho' = [(E - E_F)^2 + (N - N_F + \rho_F)^2]^{0.5}$$

$$t' = \rho' t_F / \rho_F$$

$$\chi = 2 \operatorname{atan}(t') - \pi/2$$

and where  $m_F$  and  $t_F$  are as for the forward conversion

For the reverse conversion north pole case,  $m_F$ ,  $t_F$  and  $\rho_F$  are found as for the north pole case of the forward conversion, and

$$\rho' = [(E - E_F)^2 + (N - N_F - \rho_F)^2]^{0.5}$$

$$t' \text{ is found as for the south pole case of the reverse conversion} = \rho' t_F / \rho_F$$

$$\chi = \pi/2 - 2 \operatorname{atan} t'$$

Then for for both north and south pole cases

if  $E = E_F$ ,  $\lambda = \lambda_O$

else for the south pole case

$$\lambda = \lambda_O + \operatorname{atan} [(E - E_F) / (N - N_F + \rho_F)]$$

and for the north pole case

$$\lambda = \lambda_O + \operatorname{atan} [(E - E_F) / -(N - N_F - \rho_F)] = \lambda_O + \operatorname{atan} [(E - E_F) / (N_F + \rho_F - N)]$$

**Example:**

For Projected Coordinate Reference System: Petrels 1972 / Terre Adelie Polar Stereographic

Parameters:

Ellipsoid:	International 1924	a = 6378388.0 metres	1/f = 297.0
		then e = 0.081991890	
Latitude of false origin	$\varphi_F$	67°00'00.000"S	= -1.169370599 rad
Longitude of origin	$\lambda_O$	140°00'00.000"E	= 2.443460953 rad
Easting at false origin	$E_F$	300000.00	metres
Northing at false origin	$N_F$	200000.00	metres

Forward calculation for:

Latitude	$\varphi$	=	66°36'18.820"S	=	-1.162480524 rad
Longitude	$\lambda$	=	140°04'17.040"E	=	2.444707118 rad

$$m_F = 0.391848769$$

$$\rho_F = 2499363.488$$

$$t_F = 0.204717630$$

$$t = 0.208326304$$

$$\rho = 2543421.183$$

whence

$$E = 303169.52 \text{ m}$$

$$N = 244055.72 \text{ m}$$

Reverse calculation for the same Easting and Northing (303169.522 E, 244055.721 N) first gives:

$$\rho' = 2543421.183$$

$$t' = 0.208326304$$

$$\chi = -1.1600190$$

Then	Latitude	$\varphi$	=	66°36'18.820"S
	Longitude	$\lambda$	=	140°04'17.040"E

**1.3.8 New Zealand Map Grid**

(EPSG dataset coordinate operation method code 9811)

This projection system typifies the recent development in the design and formulation of map projections where, by more complex mathematics yielding formulas readily handled by modern computers, it is possible to maintain the conformal property and minimise scale distortion over the total extent of a country area regardless of shape. Thus both North and South Islands of New Zealand, previously treated not very satisfactorily in two zones of a Transverse Mercator projection, can now be projected as one zone of what resembles most closely a curved version Oblique Mercator but which, instead of being based on a minimum scale factor straight central line, has a central line which is a complex curve roughly following the trend of both North and South Islands. The projected coordinate reference system achieves this by a form of double projection where a conformal projection of the ellipsoid is first made to say an oblique Stereographic projection and then the Cauchy-Riemann equations are invoked in order to further project the rectangular coordinates on this to a modification in which lines of constant scale can be made to follow other than the normal great or small circles of Central meridians or standard parallels. The mathematical treatment of the New Zealand Map Grid is covered by a publication by New Zealand Department of Lands and Survey Technical Circular 1973/32 by I.F.Stirling.

### **1.3.9 Tunisia Mining Grid**

(EPSG dataset coordinate operation method code 9816)

This grid is used as the basis for mineral leasing in Tunisia. Lease areas are approximately 2 x 2 km or 400 hectares. The corners of these blocks are defined through a six figure grid reference where the first three digits are an easting in kilometres and the last three digits are a northing. The latitudes and longitudes for block corners at 2 km intervals are tabulated in a mining decree dated 1<sup>st</sup> January 1953. From this tabulation in which geographic coordinates are given to 5 decimal places it can be seen that:

- a) the minimum easting is 94 km, on which the longitude is 5.68989 grads east of Paris.
- b) the maximum easting is 490 km, on which the longitude is 10.51515 grads east of Paris.
- c) each 2 km grid easting interval equals 0.02437 grads.
- d) the minimum northing is 40 km, on which the latitude is 33.39 grads.
- e) the maximum northing is 860 km, on which the latitude is 41.6039 grads.
- f) between 40 km N and 360 km N, each 2 km grid northing interval equals 0.02004 grads.
- g) between 360 km N and 860 km N, each 2 km grid northing interval equals 0.02003 grads.

This grid could be considered to be two equidistant cylindrical projection zones, north and south of the 360 km northing line. However this would require the introduction of two spheres of unique dimensions. OGP has therefore implemented the Tunisia mining grid as a coordinate conversion method in its own right. Formulas are:

#### Grads from Paris

$$\varphi \text{ (grads)} = 36.5964 + [(N - 360) * A]$$

where N is in kilometres and A = 0.010015 if N > 360, else A = 0.01002.

$$\lambda_{\text{Paris}} \text{ (grads)} = 7.83445 + [(E - 270) * 0.012185], \text{ where E is in kilometres.}$$

The reverse formulas are:

$$E \text{ (km)} = 270 + [(\lambda_{\text{Paris}} - 7.83445) / 0.012185] \text{ where } \lambda_{\text{Paris}} \text{ is in grads.}$$

$$N \text{ (km)} = 360 + [(\varphi - 36.5964) / B]$$

where  $\varphi$  is in grads and B = 0.010015 if  $\varphi > 36.5964$ , else B = 0.01002.

#### Degrees from Greenwich

Modern practice in Tunisia is to quote latitude and longitude in degrees with longitudes referenced to the Greenwich meridian. The formulas required in addition to the above are:

$$\varphi_d \text{ (degrees)} = (\varphi_g * 0.9) \text{ where } \varphi_g \text{ is in grads.}$$

$$\lambda_{\text{Greenwich}} \text{ (degrees)} = [(\lambda_{\text{Paris}} + 2.5969213) * 0.9] \text{ where } \lambda_{\text{Paris}} \text{ is in grads.}$$

$$\varphi_g \text{ (grads)} = (\varphi_d / 0.9) \text{ where } \varphi_d \text{ is in decimal degrees.}$$

$$\lambda_{\text{Paris}} \text{ (grads)} = [(\lambda_{\text{Greenwich}} / 0.9) - 2.5969213] \text{ where } \lambda_{\text{Greenwich}} \text{ is in decimal degrees.}$$

#### **Example:**

For grid location 302598,

Latitude  $\varphi = 36.5964 + [(598 - 360) * A]$ . As N > 360, A = 0.010015.

$$\varphi = 38.97997 \text{ grads} = 35.08197 \text{ degrees.}$$

Longitude  $\lambda = 7.83445 + [(E - 270) * 0.012185]$ , where  $E = 302$ .

$\lambda = 8.22437$  grads east of Paris = 9.73916 degrees east of Greenwich.

### 1.3.10 American Polyconic

(EPSG dataset coordinate operation method code 9818)

This projection was popular before the advent of modern computers due to its ease of mechanical construction, particularly in the United States. It is neither conformal nor equal area, and is distortion-free only along the longitude of origin. A modified form of the polyconic projection was adopted in 1909 for the International Map of the World series of 1/1,000,000 scale topographic maps. A general study of the polyconic family of projections by Oscar Adams of the US Geological Survey was published in 1919 (and reprinted in 1934).

The formulas to derive the projected Easting and Northing coordinates are:

If  $\varphi = 0$ :

Easting,  $E = FE + a(\lambda - \lambda_0)$

Northing,  $N = FN - M_0$

If  $\varphi$  is not zero:

Easting,  $E = FE + v \cot\varphi \sin L$

Northing,  $N = FN + M - M_0 + v \cot\varphi(1 - \cos L)$

where  $L = (\lambda - \lambda_0)\sin\varphi$

$v = a / (1 - e^2 \sin^2\varphi)^{0.5}$

$M = a[(1 - e^2/4 - 3e^4/64 - 5e^6/256 - \dots)\varphi - (3e^2/8 + 3e^4/32 + 45e^6/1024 + \dots)\sin 2\varphi + (15e^4/256 + 45e^6/1024 + \dots)\sin 4\varphi - (35e^6/3072 + \dots)\sin 6\varphi + \dots]$

with  $\varphi$  in radians and  $M_0$  for  $\varphi_0$ , the latitude of the origin, derived in the same way.

The reverse formulas to convert Easting and Northing projected coordinates to latitude and longitude require iteration. This iteration will not converge if  $(\lambda - \lambda_0) > 90^\circ$  but the projection should not be used in that range.

First  $M_0$  is calculated using the formula for  $M$  given in the forward case. Then:

If  $M_0 = (N - FN)$  then:

$\varphi = 0$

$\lambda = \lambda_0 + (E - FE)/a$

If  $M_0$  does not equal  $(N - FN)$  then:

$A = [M_0 + (N - FN)] / a$

$B = A^2 + \{(E - FE)^2 / a^2\}$

$C =$

$M$  is found

$H = Mn$

$J = H / a$

$\varphi'' = \varphi' - [A(CJ + 1) - J - 0.5C(J^2 + B)] / \{e^2 \sin 2\varphi' (J^2 + B - 2AJ) / 4C + (A - J)(CH - [2 / \sin 2\varphi']) - H\}$

Then after solution of  $\varphi$

$$\lambda = \lambda_0 + \{\text{asin}[(E-FE) C / a]\} / \sin\varphi$$

### 1.3.11 Lambert Azimuthal Equal Area

(EPSG dataset coordinate operation method code 9820)

#### Oblique aspect

To derive the projected coordinates of a point, geodetic latitude ( $\varphi$ ) is converted to authalic latitude ( $\beta$ ). The formulae to convert geodetic latitude and longitude ( $\varphi, \lambda$ ) to Easting and Northing are:

$$\text{Easting, } E = FE + \{(B * D) [\cos \beta \sin(\lambda - \lambda_0)]\}$$

$$\text{Northing, } N = FN + (B / D) \{(\cos \beta_0 \sin \beta) - [\sin \beta_0 \cos \beta \cos(\lambda - \lambda_0)]\}$$

where

$$B = R_q (2 / \{1 + \sin \beta_0 \sin \beta + [\cos \beta_0 \cos \beta \cos(\lambda - \lambda_0)]\})^{0.5}$$

$$D = a [\cos \varphi_0 / (1 - e^2 \sin^2 \varphi_0)^{0.5}] / (R_q \cos \beta_0)$$

$$R_q = a (q_p / 2)^{0.5}$$

$$\beta = \text{asin}(q / q_p)$$

$$\beta_0 = \text{asin}(q_0 / q_p)$$

$$q = (1 - e^2) ([\sin \varphi / (1 - e^2 \sin^2 \varphi)] - \{[1/(2e)] \ln [(1 - e \sin \varphi) / (1 + e \sin \varphi)]\})$$

$$q_0 = (1 - e^2) ([\sin \varphi_0 / (1 - e^2 \sin^2 \varphi_0)] - \{[1/(2e)] \ln [(1 - e \sin \varphi_0) / (1 + e \sin \varphi_0)]\})$$

$$q_p = (1 - e^2) ([\sin \varphi_p / (1 - e^2 \sin^2 \varphi_p)] - \{[1/(2e)] \ln [(1 - e \sin \varphi_p) / (1 + e \sin \varphi_p)]\})$$

where  $\varphi_p = \pi/2$  radians, thus

$$q_p = (1 - e^2) ([1 / (1 - e^2)] - \{[1/(2e)] \ln [(1 - e) / (1 + e)]\})$$

The reverse formulae to derive the geodetic latitude and longitude of a point from its Easting and Northing values are:

$$\varphi = \beta' + [(e^2/3 + 31e^4/180 + 517e^6/5040) \sin 2\beta'] + [(23e^4/360 + 251e^6/3780) \sin 4\beta'] + [(761e^6/45360) \sin 6\beta']$$

$$\lambda = \lambda_0 + \text{atan} \{(E-FE) \sin C / [D \rho \cos \beta_0 \cos C - D^2 (N-FN) \sin \beta_0 \sin C]\}$$

where

$$\beta' = \text{asin}\{(\cos C \sin \beta_0) + [(D (N-FN) \sin C \cos \beta_0) / \rho]\}$$

$$C = 2 \text{ asin}(\rho / 2 R_q)$$

$$\rho = \{[(E-FE)/D]^2 + [D (N-FN)]^2\}^{0.5}$$

and  $D, R_q,$  and  $\beta_0$  are as in the forward equations.

#### Example

For Projected Coordinate Reference System: ETRS89 / ETRS-LAEA

Parameters:

Ellipsoid:	GRS 1980	a = 6378137.0 metres	1/f = 298.2572221
	then	e = 0.081819191	

Latitude of natural origin	$\varphi_0$	52°00'00.000"N	=	0.907571211 rad
----------------------------	-------------	----------------	---	-----------------

Longitude of natural origin	$\lambda_0$	10°00'00.000"E	=	0.174532925 rad
-----------------------------	-------------	----------------	---	-----------------

False easting	FE	4321000.00	metres	
---------------	----	------------	--------	--

False northing	FN	3210000.00	metres	
----------------	----	------------	--------	--

Forward calculation for:

Latitude	$\varphi$	= 50°00'00.000"N	=	0.872664626 rad
----------	-----------	------------------	---	-----------------

Longitude	$\lambda$	= 5°00'00.000"E	=	0.087266463 rad
-----------	-----------	-----------------	---	-----------------

First gives

$$\begin{aligned} q_p &= 1.995531087 & q_o &= 1.569825704 \\ q &= 1.525832247 & R_q &= 6371007.181 \\ \beta_o &= 0.905397517 & \beta &= 0.870458708 \\ D &= 1.000425395 & B &= 6374393.455 \end{aligned}$$

whence

$$\begin{aligned} E &= 3962799.45 \text{ m} \\ N &= 2999718.85 \text{ m} \end{aligned}$$

Reverse calculation for the same Easting and Northing (3962799.45 E, 2999718.85 N) first gives:

$$\begin{aligned} \rho &= 415276.208 \\ C &= 0.065193736 \\ \beta' &= 0.870458708 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Then Latitude } \varphi &= 50^\circ 00' 00.000'' \text{N} \\ \text{Longitude } \lambda &= 5^\circ 00' 00.000'' \text{E} \end{aligned}$$

### **Polar aspect**

For the polar aspect of the Lambert Azimuthal Equal Area projection, some of the above equations are indeterminate. Instead, for the forward case from latitude and longitude ( $\varphi, \lambda$ ) to Easting (E) and Northing (N):

For the north polar case:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Easting, } E &= FE + [\rho \sin(\lambda - \lambda_o)] \\ \text{Northing, } N &= FN - [\rho \cos(\lambda - \lambda_o)] \end{aligned}$$

where

$$\rho = a (q_p - q)^{0.5}$$

and  $q_p$  and  $q$  are found as for the general case above.

For the south polar case:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Easting, } E &= FE + [\rho \sin(\lambda - \lambda_o)] \\ \text{Northing, } N &= FN + [\rho \cos(\lambda - \lambda_o)] \end{aligned}$$

where

$$\rho = a (q_p + q)^{0.5}$$

and  $q_p$  and  $q$  are found as for the general case above.

For the reverse formulas to derive the geodetic latitude and longitude of a point from its Easting and Northing:

$$\varphi = \beta' + [(e^2/3 + 31e^4/180 + 517e^6/5040) \sin 2\beta'] + [(23e^4/360 + 251e^6/3780) \sin 4\beta'] + [(761e^6/45360) \sin 6\beta']$$

as for the oblique case, but where

$$\beta' = \pm \text{asin} [1 - \rho^2 / (a^2 \{1 - [(1 - e^2)/2e] \ln[(1 - e)/(1 + e)]\})], \text{ taking the sign of } \varphi_o$$

$$\text{and } \rho = \{[(E - FE)]^2 + [(N - FN)]^2\}^{0.5}$$

Then

$$\lambda = \lambda_o + \text{atan} [(E - FE) / (N - FN)] \text{ for the south pole case}$$

and

$$\lambda = \lambda_o + \text{atan} [(E - FE) / -(N - FN)] = \lambda_o + \text{atan} [(E - FE) / (FN - N)] \text{ for the north pole case.}$$

### **1.3.11.1 Lambert Azimuthal Equal Area (Spherical)**

(EPSG dataset coordinate operation method code 1027)

The US National Atlas uses the spherical form of the oblique case, so exceptionally OGP includes this method in the EPSG dataset. See USGS Professional Paper 1395, "Map Projections - A Working Manual" by John P. Snyder for formulas and example.

R is the radius of the sphere and will normally be one of the CRS parameters. If the figure of the earth used is an ellipsoid rather than a sphere then R should be calculated as the radius of the authalic sphere using the formula for  $R_A$  given in section 1.2 of this Guidance Note, table 3. Note however that if applying spherical formula to ellipsoidal coordinates, the authalic projection properties are not preserved.

### **1.3.12 Lambert Cylindrical Equal Area**

(EPSG dataset coordinate operation method code 9835)

See USGS Professional Paper 1395, "Map Projections - A Working Manual" by John P. Snyder for formulas and example.

#### **1.3.12.1 Lambert Cylindrical Equal Area (Spherical)**

(EPSG dataset coordinate operation method code 9834)

For the forward calculation for the normal aspect of the projection in which  $\varphi_1$  is the latitude of the standard parallel:

$$\begin{aligned} E &= FE + R (\lambda - \lambda_0) \cos(\varphi_1) \\ N &= FN + R \sin(\varphi) / \cos(\varphi_1) \end{aligned}$$

where  $\varphi_1$ ,  $\varphi$  and  $\lambda$  are expressed in radians

R is the radius of the sphere and will normally be one of the CRS parameters. If the figure of the earth used is an ellipsoid rather than a sphere then R should be calculated as the radius of the authalic sphere using the formula for  $R_A$  given in section 1.2, table 3.

For the reverse calculation:

$$\begin{aligned} \varphi &= \arcsin \{ [(N - FN) / R] \cos(\varphi_1) \} \\ \lambda &= \lambda_0 + \{ [E - FE] / [R \cos(\varphi_1)] \} \end{aligned}$$

where R is as for the forward method.

See USGS Professional Paper 1395, "Map Projections - A Working Manual" by John P. Snyder for formulas for oblique and polar aspects and examples.

### **1.3.13 Albers Equal Area**

(EPSG dataset coordinate operation method code 9822)

To derive the projected coordinates of a point, geodetic latitude ( $\varphi$ ) is converted to authalic latitude ( $\beta$ ). The formulas to convert geodetic latitude and longitude ( $\varphi, \lambda$ ) to Easting (E) and Northing (N) are:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Easting (E)} &= E_F + (\rho \sin \theta) \\ \text{Northing (N)} &= N_F + \rho_0 - (\rho \cos \theta) \end{aligned}$$

where

$$\begin{aligned}\theta &= n (\lambda - \lambda_0) \\ \rho &= [a (C - n \alpha)^{0.5}] / n \\ \rho_0 &= [a (C - n \alpha_0)^{0.5}] / n\end{aligned}$$

and

$$\begin{aligned}C &= m_1^2 + (n \alpha_1) \\ n &= (m_1^2 - m_2^2) / (\alpha_2 - \alpha_1) \\ m_1 &= \cos \varphi_1 / (1 - e^2 \sin^2 \varphi_1)^{0.5} \\ m_2 &= \cos \varphi_2 / (1 - e^2 \sin^2 \varphi_2)^{0.5} \\ \alpha &= (1 - e^2) \{ [\sin \varphi / (1 - e^2 \sin^2 \varphi)] - [1/(2e)] \ln [(1 - e \sin \varphi) / (1 + e \sin \varphi)] \} \\ \alpha_0 &= (1 - e^2) \{ [\sin \varphi_0 / (1 - e^2 \sin^2 \varphi_0)] - [1/(2e)] \ln [(1 - e \sin \varphi_0) / (1 + e \sin \varphi_0)] \} \\ \alpha_1 &= (1 - e^2) \{ [\sin \varphi_1 / (1 - e^2 \sin^2 \varphi_1)] - [1/(2e)] \ln [(1 - e \sin \varphi_1) / (1 + e \sin \varphi_1)] \} \\ \alpha_2 &= (1 - e^2) \{ [\sin \varphi_2 / (1 - e^2 \sin^2 \varphi_2)] - [1/(2e)] \ln [(1 - e \sin \varphi_2) / (1 + e \sin \varphi_2)] \}\end{aligned}$$

The reverse formulas to derive the geodetic latitude and longitude of a point from its Easting and Northing values are:

$$\begin{aligned}\varphi &= B' + (e^2/3 + 31e^4/180 + 517e^6/5040) \sin 2B' + [(23e^4/360 + 251e^6/3780) \sin 4B'] \\ &\quad + [(761e^6/45360) \sin 6B']\end{aligned}$$

$$\lambda = \lambda_0 + (\theta / n)$$

where

$$\begin{aligned}B' &= \text{asin}(\alpha' / \{1 - [(1 - e^2) / (2 e)] \ln [(1 - e) / (1 + e)]\}) \\ \alpha' &= [C - (\rho^2 - n^2 / a^2)] / n \\ \rho &= \{(E - E_F)^2 + [\rho_0 - (N - N_F)]^2\}^{0.5} \\ \theta &= \text{atan} [(E - E_F) / [\rho_0 - (N - N_F)]]\end{aligned}$$

and C, n and  $\rho_0$  are as in the forward equations.

### Example

See USGS Professional Paper 1395, "Map Projections - A Working Manual" by John P. Snyder.

### 1.3.14 Equidistant Cylindrical

(EPSG dataset coordinate operation method code 1028)

The characteristics of the Equidistant Cylindrical projection are that the scale is true along two standard parallels equidistant from the equator (or at the equator if that is the standard parallel) and along the meridians. The formulas usually given for this method employ spherical equations with a mean radius of curvature sphere calculated from the latitude of standard parallel. This is a compromise, often satisfactory for the low resolution purposes to which it is put. However in the spherical implementation the distance is not true along the meridians nor along the standard parallel(s). Spherical formulas are given in section 1.13.14.1 below.

The ellipsoidal forward equations to convert latitude and longitude to easting and northing are

$$\begin{aligned}E &= FE + v_1 \cos \varphi_1 (\lambda - \lambda_0) \\ N &= FN + M\end{aligned}$$

where

$$v_1 = a / (1 - e^2 \sin^2 \varphi_1)^{0.5} \text{ (see section 1.2 table 3)}$$

and

$$M = a(1 - e^2) \int_0^\varphi (1 - e^2 \sin^2 \varphi)^{-3/2} d\varphi$$

(1)

or



$$M = a \left[ \int_0^\varphi (1 - e^2 \sin^2 \varphi)^{1/2} d\varphi - e^2 \sin \varphi \cos \varphi / (1 - e^2 \sin^2 \varphi)^{1/2} \right] \quad (2)$$

The first calculation (1) of M above contains an elliptic integral of the third kind. The alternative calculation (2) of M contains an elliptic integral of the second kind. If software supports the functions for these integrals, then the functions can be used directly. Otherwise, the value of M can be computed through a series equation. The following series equation is adequate for any ellipsoid with a flattening of 1/290 or less, which covers all earth-based ellipsoids of record.

$$\begin{aligned} M = & a \left[ \left( 1 - \frac{1}{4} e^2 - \frac{3}{64} e^4 - \frac{5}{256} e^6 - \frac{175}{16384} e^8 - \frac{441}{65536} e^{10} - \frac{4851}{1048576} e^{12} - \frac{14157}{4194304} e^{14} \right) \varphi \right. \\ & + \left( -\frac{3}{8} e^2 - \frac{3}{32} e^4 - \frac{45}{1024} e^6 - \frac{105}{4096} e^8 - \frac{2205}{131072} e^{10} - \frac{6237}{524288} e^{12} - \frac{297297}{33554432} e^{14} \right) \sin 2\varphi \\ & + \left( \frac{15}{256} e^4 + \frac{45}{1024} e^6 + \frac{525}{16384} e^8 + \frac{1575}{65536} e^{10} + \frac{155925}{8388608} e^{12} + \frac{495495}{33554432} e^{14} \right) \sin 4\varphi \\ & + \left( -\frac{35}{3072} e^6 - \frac{175}{12288} e^8 - \frac{3675}{262144} e^{10} - \frac{13475}{1048576} e^{12} - \frac{385385}{33554432} e^{14} \right) \sin 6\varphi \\ & + \left( \frac{315}{131072} e^8 + \frac{2205}{524288} e^{10} + \frac{43659}{8388608} e^{12} + \frac{189189}{33554432} e^{14} \right) \sin 8\varphi \\ & + \left( -\frac{693}{1310720} e^{10} - \frac{6237}{5242880} e^{12} - \frac{297297}{167772160} e^{14} \right) \sin 10\varphi \\ & + \left( \frac{1001}{8388608} e^{12} + \frac{11011}{33554432} e^{14} \right) \sin 12\varphi \\ & \left. + \left( -\frac{6435}{234881024} e^{14} \right) \sin 14\varphi \right] \end{aligned}$$

The inverse equations are

$$\begin{aligned} \lambda &= \lambda_0 + X / (v_1 \cos \varphi_1) = \lambda_0 + X(1 - e^2 \sin^2 \varphi_1)^{1/2} / (a \cos \varphi_1) \\ \varphi &= \mu + \left( \frac{3}{2} n - \frac{27}{32} n^3 + \frac{269}{512} n^5 - \frac{6607}{24576} n^7 \right) \sin 2\mu \\ &+ \left( \frac{21}{16} n^2 - \frac{55}{32} n^4 + \frac{6759}{4096} n^6 \right) \sin 4\mu \\ &+ \left( \frac{151}{96} n^3 - \frac{417}{128} n^5 + \frac{87963}{20480} n^7 \right) \sin 6\mu \\ &+ \left( \frac{1097}{512} n^4 - \frac{15543}{2560} n^6 \right) \sin 8\mu \\ &+ \left( \frac{8011}{2560} n^5 - \frac{69119}{6144} n^7 \right) \sin 10\mu \\ &+ \left( \frac{293393}{61440} n^6 \right) \sin 12\mu \\ &+ \left( \frac{6845701}{860160} n^7 \right) \sin 14\mu \end{aligned}$$

where

$$\begin{aligned} X &= E - FE \\ Y &= N - FN \\ \mu &= Y / \left[ a \left( 1 - \frac{1}{4} e^2 - \frac{3}{64} e^4 - \frac{5}{256} e^6 - \frac{175}{16384} e^8 - \frac{441}{65536} e^{10} - \frac{4851}{1048576} e^{12} - \frac{14157}{4194304} e^{14} \right) \right] \\ n &= \frac{1 - (1 - e^2)^{1/2}}{1 + (1 - e^2)^{1/2}} \end{aligned}$$

**Example**

For Projected Coordinate Reference System: WGS84 / World Equidistant Cylindrical  
 Parameters:

Ellipsoid: WGS 1984     $a = 6378137.0$  metres     $1/f = 298.257223563$   
 then  $e = 0.08181919084262$

Latitude of first standard parallel	$\varphi_1$	=	$0^\circ 00' 00.000''\text{N}$	=	0.0 rad
Longitude of natural origin	$\lambda_0$	=	$0^\circ 00' 00.000''\text{E}$	=	0.0 rad
False easting	FE	=	0.00	metres	
False northing	FN	=	0.00	metres	

Forward calculation for:

Latitude	$\varphi$	=	$55^\circ 00' 00.000''\text{N}$	=	0.959931086 rad
Longitude	$\lambda$	=	$10^\circ 00' 00.000''\text{E}$	=	0.174532925 rad

First gives

Radius of curvature in prime vertical at $\varphi_1$	$v_1$	=	6378137.0
Radius of curvature of parallel at $\varphi_1$	$v_1 \cos \varphi_1$	=	6378137.0
Meridional arc distance from equator to $\varphi$	M	=	6097230.3131

whence

$E = 1113194.91$  m  
 $N = 6097230.31$  m

Reverse calculation for the same Easting and Northing (1113194.91 E, 6097230.31 N) first gives:

Rectifying latitude (radians)	$\mu$	=	0.9575624671
Second flattening	$n$	=	0.001679220386

Then Latitude	$\varphi$	=	$55^\circ 00' 00.000''\text{N}$
Longitude	$\lambda$	=	$10^\circ 00' 00.000''\text{E}$

**1.3.14.1 Equidistant Cylindrical (Spherical)**

(EPSG dataset coordinate operation method code 1029)

This method has one of the simplest formulas available. If the latitude of natural origin ( $\varphi_1$ ) is at the equator the method is also known as Plate Carrée. It is not used for rigorous topographic mapping because its distortion characteristics are unsuitable. Formulas are included to distinguish this map projection method from an approach sometimes mistakenly called by the same name and used for simple computer display of geographic coordinates – see Pseudo Plate Carrée below.

For the forward calculation of the Equidistant Cylindrical method:

$$E = FE + R (\lambda - \lambda_0) \cos(\varphi_1)$$

$$N = FN + R \varphi$$

where  $\varphi_1$ ,  $\lambda_0$ ,  $\varphi$  and  $\lambda$  are expressed in radians.

R is the radius of the sphere and will normally be one of the CRS parameters. If the figure of the earth used is an ellipsoid rather than a sphere then R should be calculated as the radius of the conformal sphere at the projection origin at latitude  $\varphi_1$  using the formula for  $R_C$  given in section 1.2, table 3, of this document. Note

however that if applying spherical formula to ellipsoidal coordinates, the equidistant projection properties are not preserved.

For the reverse calculation:

$$\begin{aligned}\varphi &= (N - FN) / R \\ \lambda &= \lambda_0 + \{[E - FE] / [R \cos(\varphi_1)]\}\end{aligned}$$

where R is as for the forward method.

### **1.3.14.2 Pseudo Plate Carrée**

(EPSG dataset coordinate operation method code 9825)

This is not a map projection in the true sense as the coordinate system units are angular (for example, decimal degrees) and therefore of variable linear scale. It is used only for depiction of graticule (latitude/longitude) coordinates on a computer display. The origin is at latitude ( $\varphi$ ) = 0, longitude ( $\lambda$ ) = 0. See above for the formulas for the proper Plate Carrée map projection method.

For the forward calculation:

$$\begin{aligned}X &= \lambda \\ Y &= \varphi\end{aligned}$$

For the reverse calculation:

$$\begin{aligned}\varphi &= Y \\ \lambda &= X\end{aligned}$$

### **1.3.15 Bonne**

(EPSG dataset coordinate operation method code 9827)

The Bonne projection was frequently adopted for 18<sup>th</sup> and 19<sup>th</sup> century mapping, but being equal area rather than conformal its use for topographic mapping was replaced during the 20<sup>th</sup> century by conformal map projection methods.

The formulas to convert geodetic latitude and longitude ( $\varphi, \lambda$ ) to Easting and Northing are:

$$\begin{aligned}E &= (\rho \sin T) + FE \\ N &= (a m_0 / \sin \varphi_0 - \rho \cos T) + FN\end{aligned}$$

where

$$m = \cos \varphi / (1 - e^2 \sin^2 \varphi)^{0.5}$$

with  $\varphi$  in radians and  $m_0$  for  $\varphi_0$ , the latitude of the origin, derived in the same way.

$$M = a[(1 - e^2/4 - 3e^4/64 - 5e^6/256 - \dots)\varphi - (3e^2/8 + 3e^4/32 + 45e^6/1024 + \dots)\sin 2\varphi + (15e^4/256 + 45e^6/1024 + \dots)\sin 4\varphi - (35e^6/3072 + \dots)\sin 6\varphi + \dots]$$

with  $\varphi$  in radians and  $M_0$  for  $\varphi_0$ , the latitude of the origin, derived in the same way.

$$\begin{aligned}\rho &= a m_0 / \sin \varphi_0 + M_0 - M \\ T &= a m (\lambda - \lambda_0) / \rho \quad \text{with } \lambda \text{ and } \lambda_0 \text{ in radians}\end{aligned}$$

For the reverse calculation:

$$X = E - FE$$

$$Y = N - FN$$

$$\rho = \pm [X^2 + (a \cdot m_0 / \sin \varphi_0 - Y)^2]^{0.5} \text{ taking the sign of } \varphi_0$$

$$M = a \cdot m_0 / \sin \varphi_0 + M_0 - \rho$$

$$\mu = M / [a (1 - e^2/4 - 3e^4/64 - 5e^6/256 - \dots)]$$

$$e_1 = [1 - (1 - e^2)^{0.5}] / [1 + (1 - e^2)^{0.5}]$$

$$\varphi = \mu + (3e_1/2 - 27e_1^3/32 + \dots)\sin 2\mu + (21e_1^2/16 - 55e_1^4/32 + \dots)\sin 4\mu \\ + (151e_1^3/96 + \dots)\sin 6\mu + (1097e_1^4/512 - \dots)\sin 8\mu + \dots$$

$$m = \cos \varphi / (1 - e^2 \sin^2 \varphi)^{0.5}$$

If  $\varphi_0$  is not negative

$$\lambda = \lambda_0 + \rho \{ \text{atan}[X / (a \cdot m_0 / \sin \varphi_0 - Y)] \} / a \cdot m$$

but if  $\varphi_0$  is negative

$$\lambda = \lambda_0 + \rho \{ \text{atan}[-X / (Y - a \cdot m_0 / \sin \varphi_0)] \} / a \cdot m$$

In either case, if  $\varphi = \pm 90^\circ$ ,  $m = 0$  and the equation for  $\lambda$  is indeterminate, so use  $\lambda = \lambda_0$ .

### **1.3.15.1 Bonne (South Orientated)**

(EPSG dataset coordinate operation method code 9828)

In Portugal a special case of the method with coordinate system axes positive south and west has been used for older mapping. The formulas are as for the general case above except:

$$W = FE - (\rho \sin T)$$

$$S = FN - (a \cdot m_0 / \sin \varphi_0 - \rho \cos T)$$

In these formulas the terms FE and FN retain their definition, i.e. in the Bonne (South Orientated) method they increase the Westing and Southing value at the natural origin. In this method they are effectively false westing (FW) and false southing (FS) respectively.

For the reverse formulas, those for the standard Bonne method above apply, with the exception that:

$$X = FE - W$$

$$Y = FN - S$$

### **1.3.16 Azimuthal Equidistant**

#### **1.3.16.1 Modified Azimuthal Equidistant**

(EPSG dataset coordinate operation method code 9832)

For various islands in Micronesia the US National Geodetic Survey has developed formulae for the oblique form of the ellipsoidal projection which calculates distance from the origin along a normal section rather than the geodesic. For the distances over which these projections are used (under 800km) this modification introduces no significant error.

First calculate a constant for the projection:

$$v_0 = a / (1 - e^2 \sin^2 \varphi_0)^{1/2}$$

Then the forward conversion from latitude and longitude is given by:

$$\begin{aligned} v &= a / (1 - e^2 \sin^2 \varphi)^{1/2} \\ \psi &= \text{atan} [(1 - e^2) \tan \varphi + e^2 v_0 \sin \varphi_0 / (v \cos \varphi)] \\ \alpha &= \text{atan} \{ \sin (\lambda - \lambda_0) / [\cos \varphi_0 \tan \psi - \sin \varphi_0 \cos (\lambda - \lambda_0)] \} \\ G &= e \sin \varphi_0 / (1 - e^2)^{1/2} \\ H &= e \cos \varphi_0 \cos \alpha / (1 - e^2)^{1/2} \end{aligned}$$

Then

$$\begin{aligned} \text{if } (\sin \alpha) = 0, \quad s &= \text{asin} (\cos \varphi_0 \sin \psi - \sin \varphi_0 \cos \psi) * \text{SIGN}(\cos \alpha) \\ \text{if } (\sin \alpha) \neq 0, \quad s &= \text{asin} [\sin (\lambda - \lambda_0) \cos \psi / \sin \alpha] \end{aligned}$$

and in either case

$$c = v_0 s \{ [1 - s^2 H^2 (1 - H^2) / 6] + [(s^3 / 8)GH(1 - 2H^2)] + (s^4 / 120)[H^2(4 - 7H^2) - 3G^2(1 - 7H^2)] - [(s^5 / 48)GH] \}$$

Then

$$\begin{aligned} E &= FE + c \sin \alpha \\ N &= FN + c \cos \alpha \end{aligned}$$

For the reverse conversion from easting and northing to latitude and longitude:

$$\begin{aligned} c' &= [(E - FE)^2 + (N - FN)^2]^{0.5} \\ \alpha' &= \text{atan} [(E - FE) / (N - FN)] \\ A &= -e^2 \cos^2 \varphi_0 \cos^2 \alpha' / (1 - e^2) \\ B &= 3e^2 (1 - A) \sin \varphi_0 \cos \varphi_0 \cos \alpha' / (1 - e^2) \\ D &= c' / v_0 \\ J &= D - [A (1 + A) D^3 / 6] - [B (1 + 3A) D^4 / 24] \\ K &= 1 - (A J^2 / 2) - (B J^3 / 6) \\ \Psi' &= \text{asin} (\sin \varphi_0 \cos J + \cos \varphi_0 \sin J \cos \alpha') \end{aligned}$$

Then

$$\begin{aligned} \varphi &= \text{atan} [(1 - e^2 K \sin \varphi_0 / \sin \Psi') \tan \Psi' / (1 - e^2)] \\ \lambda &= \lambda_0 + \text{asin} (\sin \alpha' \sin J / \cos \Psi') \end{aligned}$$

### Example:

For Projected Coordinate Reference System: Guam 1963 / Yap Islands

Parameters:

Ellipsoid:	Clarke 1866	a = 6378206.400 metres	1/f = 294.97870
	then	e = 0.08227185	e <sup>2</sup> = 0.00676866
Latitude of natural origin	$\varphi_0$	9°32'48.15"N	= 0.166621493 rad
Longitude of natural origin	$\lambda_0$	138°10'07.48"E	= 2.411499514 rad
False easting	FE	40000.00 metres	
False northing	FN	60000.00 metres	

Forward calculation for:

Latitude	$\varphi$	=	9°35'47.493"N	=	0.167490973 rad
Longitude	$\lambda$	=	138°11'34.908"E	=	2.411923377 rad

First gives

$$\begin{array}{ll} v_o = 6378800.24 & G = 0.013691332 \\ v = 6378806.40 & H = 0.073281276 \\ \psi = 0.167485249 & s = 0.000959566 \\ \alpha = 0.450640866 & c = 6120.88 \end{array}$$

whence

$$\begin{array}{ll} E = 42665.90 \\ N = 65509.82 \end{array}$$

Reverse calculation for the same Easting and Northing (42665.90 m E, 65509.82 m N) first gives:

$$\begin{array}{ll} c' = 6120.88 & D = 0.000959566 \\ \alpha' = 0.450640866 & J = 0.000959566 \\ A = -0.005370145 & K = 1.000000002 \\ B = 0.003026119 & \Psi' = 0.167485249 \end{array}$$

whence

$$\begin{array}{lll} \varphi = 0.167490973 \text{ rad} & = & 9^\circ 35' 47.493'' \text{N} \\ \lambda = 2.411923377 \text{ rad} & = & 138^\circ 11' 34.908'' \text{E} \end{array}$$

### 1.3.16.2 Guam Projection

(EPSG dataset coordinate operation method code 9831)

The Guam projection is a simplified form of the oblique case of the azimuthal equidistant projection. For the Guam projection the forward conversion from latitude and longitude is given by:

$$\begin{aligned} x &= a(\lambda - \lambda_o) \cos \varphi / [(1 - e^2 \sin^2 \varphi)^{(1/2)}] \\ E &= FE + x \\ N &= FN + M - M_o + \{x^2 \tan \varphi [(1 - e^2 \sin^2 \varphi)^{(1/2)}] / (2a)\} \end{aligned}$$

where

$$\begin{aligned} M &= a[(1 - e^2/4 - 3e^4/64 - 5e^6/256 - \dots)\varphi - (3e^2/8 + 3e^4/32 + 45e^6/1024 + \dots)\sin 2\varphi \\ &\quad + (15e^4/256 + 45e^6/1024 + \dots)\sin 4\varphi - (35e^6/3072 + \dots)\sin 6\varphi + \dots] \end{aligned}$$

with  $\varphi$  in radians and  $M_o$  for  $\varphi_o$ , the latitude of the natural origin, derived in the same way.

The reverse conversion from easting and northing to latitude and longitude requires iteration of three equations. The Guam projection uses three iterations, which is satisfactory over the small area of application. First  $M_o$  for the latitude of the origin  $\varphi_o$  is derived as for the forward conversion. Then:

$$e_1 = [1 - (1 - e^2)^{0.5}] / [1 + (1 - e^2)^{0.5}]$$

and

$$\begin{aligned} M' &= M_o + (N - FN) - \{(E - FE)^2 \tan \varphi_o [(1 - e^2 \sin^2 \varphi_o)^{(1/2)}] / (2a)\} \\ \mu' &= M' / a(1 - e^2/4 - 3e^4/64 - 5e^6/256 - \dots) \\ \varphi' &= \mu' + (3e_1/2 - 27e_1^3/32)\sin(2\mu') + (21e_1^2/16 - 55e_1^4/32)\sin(4\mu') + (151e_1^3/96)\sin(6\mu') \\ &\quad + (1097e_1^4/512)\sin(8\mu') \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} M'' &= M_o + (N - FN) - \{(E - FE)^2 \tan \varphi' [(1 - e^2 \sin^2 \varphi')^{(1/2)}] / (2a)\} \\ \mu'' &= M'' / a(1 - e^2/4 - 3e^4/64 - 5e^6/256 - \dots) \\ \varphi'' &= \mu'' + (3e_1/2 - 27e_1^3/32)\sin(2\mu'') + (21e_1^2/16 - 55e_1^4/32)\sin(4\mu'') + (151e_1^3/96)\sin(6\mu'') \\ &\quad + (1097e_1^4/512)\sin(8\mu'') \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} M''' &= M_o + (N - FN) - \{(E - FE)^2 \tan \varphi'' [(1 - e^2 \sin^2 \varphi'')^{(1/2)}] / (2a)\} \\ \mu''' &= M''' / a(1 - e^2/4 - 3e^4/64 - 5e^6/256 - \dots) \\ \varphi''' &= \mu''' + (3e_1/2 - 27e_1^3/32)\sin(2\mu''') + (21e_1^2/16 - 55e_1^4/32)\sin(4\mu''') + (151e_1^3/96)\sin(6\mu''') \end{aligned}$$

$$+ (1097e_1^4/512)\sin(8\mu''')$$

Then

$$\lambda = \lambda_0 + \{(E - FE) [(1 - e^2 \sin^2 \varphi''')^{(1/2)}] / (a \cos \varphi''')\}$$

**Example:**

For Projected Coordinate Reference System: Guam 1963 / Guam SPCS

Parameters:

Ellipsoid:	Clarke 1866	a = 6378206.400 metres	1/f = 294.97870
	then	e = 0.08227185	e <sup>2</sup> = 0.00676866
Latitude of natural origin	$\varphi_0$	13°28'20.87887"N	= 0.235138896 rad
Longitude of natural origin	$\lambda_0$	144°44'55.50254"E	= 2.526342288 rad
False easting	FE	50000.00 metres	
False northing	FN	50000.00 metres	

Forward calculation for:

Latitude	$\varphi$	=	13°20'20.53846"N	=	0.232810140 rad
Longitude	$\lambda$	=	144°38'07.19265"E	=	2.524362746 rad

x	=	-12287.52 m
M <sub>0</sub>	=	1489888.76 m
M	=	1475127.96 m

whence

E	=	37,712.48 m
N	=	35,242.00 m

Reverse calculation for the same Easting and Northing (37,712.48 m E, 35,242.00 m N) first gives:

M <sub>0</sub>	=	1489888.76 m
e <sub>1</sub>	=	0.001697916

and

	<u>M (metres)</u>	<u><math>\mu</math> (radians)</u>	<u><math>\varphi</math> (radians)</u>	
First iteration:	1475127.93	0.231668814	0.232810136	
Second iteration:	1475127.96	0.231668819	0.232810140	
Third iteration:	1475127.96	0.231668819	0.232810140	= 13°20'20.538"N

Then

$$\lambda = 2.524362746 \text{ rad} = 144^\circ 38' 07.193'' \text{E}$$

**1.3.17 Perspectives**

**1.3.17.1 Intoduction**

Geophysical and reservoir interpretation and visualisation systems now work in a 3D "cube" offering continuous, scaleable, viewing and mapping in a single Cartesian 3D coordinate system. Subsurface mapping historically has been undertaken in pseudo-3D coordinate reference systems consisting of a vertical component together with an independent horizontal component which had to be changed to maintain cartographic correctness over large areas. Map projections are inherently distorted. Typically, distances and areas measured on the map-grid only approximate their true values. Over small areas near the projection origin, the distortions can be managed to be within acceptable limits. But it is impossible to map large areas

without significant distortion. This creates problems when there is a requirement to map areas beyond the limits of a map zone, typically overcome by moving to another zone.

The motivation here is to offer a method of overcoming these limitations by describing geodetically well-defined CRSs that can be implemented in 3D within a visualisation environment and can be scaled (from reservoirs to regions) without distortion. There are three components:

- the use of geodetically rigorous 3D geocentric and topocentric coordinates, the relationship of which to geographic coordinates is described in section 2.2;
- perspective realizations of topocentric coordinates in 2D (sections 1.3.17.2 and 1.3.17.3);
- an ellipsoidal development of the orthographic projection (section 1.3.18). This 2D representation contains the quantifiable mapping distortions inherent in this projection method.

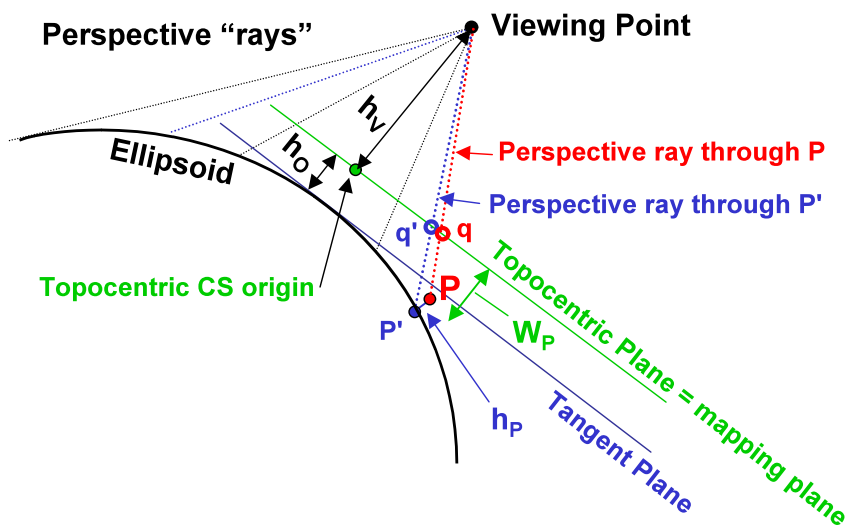


Figure 9. Vertical perspective

Classical map projections map 2D latitude and longitude onto the plane. With reference to figure 9 above, point P at a height  $h_p$  above the ellipsoid is first reduced to the ellipsoid surface at P', and P' is then mapped onto the mapping plane at q'. The height of the point is not material.

In contrast, perspectives map points on, above or below the surface of the ellipsoid onto the mapping plane; point P is mapped onto the mapping plane at q. The height of a point above or depth below the surface of the ellipsoid will change the horizontal coordinates at which the point maps. Perspectives are a view of the Earth from space without regard to cartographic properties such as conformality or equality of area.

Perspectives can be classified as vertical or tilted. Consider a point anywhere on the ellipsoid, a plane tangent to the ellipsoid at that point, and a perpendicular to the ellipsoid (and the tangent plane) at that point. Vertical perspectives are the view of the Earth from a point on the perpendicular through a mapping plane which is either the tangent plane or a plane parallel to the tangent plane. Tilted perspectives are the view from a point which is not on the perpendicular. Tilted perspectives are not considered further in this guidance note.

In addition to vertical and tilted, perspectives can be classified as positive or negative. Perspectives with a positive viewing height  $h_v$  are the view of the Earth from above, as from a satellite or from another celestial body (and as shown in figure 9). Perspectives with a negative viewing height  $h_v$  are the “view” of the Earth from below, which is mathematically but not physically possible. The mapping equations, however, are identical; only the sign of one term (the viewing height,  $h_v$ ) differs. The viewing point cannot be on the mapping plane.

In this development vertical perspectives are based upon topocentric coordinates that are valid for an ellipsoidal Earth. The introduction of an intermediate topocentric coordinate system (see Section 2.2)



simplifies the mathematical exposition of vertical perspectives. In such a topocentric Cartesian coordinate system, two of the three axes represent the horizontal plane. A change of perspective (zooming in and out) is achieved by moving the viewing point along the perpendicular. The mapping plane is the plane parallel to the tangent plane which passes through the topocentric origin (rather than the tangent plane itself). In the special case of the topocentric origin being on the ellipsoid surface then the mapping plane will be the tangent plane.

### 1.3.17.2 Vertical Perspective

(EPSG dataset coordinate operation method code 9838)

This general case deals with a viewing point at a finite height above the origin. If the viewing point is at infinity ( $h_v = \infty$ ), the formulas for the orthographic case given in the next section should be used.

The forward equations for the Vertical Perspective to convert geographic 3D coordinates ( $\varphi, \lambda, h$ ) to Easting (E) and Northing (N) begin with the methods of Section 2.2.3 to convert the geographic coordinates to topocentric coordinates U, V, W. The perspective projection origin is coincident with the topographic origin and has coordinates ( $\varphi_0, \lambda_0, h_0$ ). As in Section 2.2.3:

$$U = (v + h) \cos \varphi \sin (\lambda - \lambda_0)$$

$$V = (v + h) [\sin \varphi \cos \varphi_0 - \cos \varphi \sin \varphi_0 \cos (\lambda - \lambda_0)] + e^2 (v_0 \sin \varphi_0 - v \sin \varphi) \cos \varphi_0$$

$$W = (v + h) [\sin \varphi \sin \varphi_0 + \cos \varphi \cos \varphi_0 \cos (\lambda - \lambda_0)] + e^2 (v_0 \sin \varphi_0 - v \sin \varphi) \sin \varphi_0 - (v_0 + h_0)$$

Then, given the height  $h_v$  of the perspective viewing point above the origin, the perspective coordinates (E, N) are calculated from topocentric coordinates (U, V, W) as:

$$E = U h_v / (h_v - W)$$

$$N = V h_v / (h_v - W)$$

The reverse calculation from E,N to U,V,W and  $\varphi, \lambda, h$  is indeterminate.

#### Example:

For Projected Coordinate Reference System: WGS 84 / Vertical Perspective example

Parameters:

Ellipsoid: WGS 84 a = 6378137.0 metres 1/f = 298.2572236  
 then e = 0.081819191

Topographic origin latitude  $\varphi_0 = 55^\circ 00' 00.000''\text{N} = 0.95993109 \text{ rad}$   
 Topographic origin longitude  $\lambda_0 = 5^\circ 00' 00.000''\text{E} = 0.08726646 \text{ rad}$   
 Topographic origin ellipsoidal height  $h_0 = 200 \text{ metres}$   
 Height of viewpoint  $h_v = 5\,900 \text{ kilometres}$

Forward calculation for:

Latitude  $\varphi = 53^\circ 48' 33.82''\text{N} = 0.939151101 \text{ rad}$   
 Longitude  $\lambda = 2^\circ 07' 46.38''\text{E} = 0.037167659 \text{ rad}$   
 Ellipsoidal height  $h = 73 \text{ metres}$

$e^2 = 0.006694380$   
 $v_0 = 6392\,510.73 \text{ m}$   
 $v = 6392\,088.02 \text{ m}$

$U = -189\,013.869 \text{ m}$   
 $V = -128\,642.040 \text{ m}$

$$W = -4\,220.171 \text{ m}$$

Then,

$$E = -188\,878.767 \text{ m}$$

$$N = -128\,550.090 \text{ m}$$

**1.3.17.3 Vertical Perspective (orthographic case)**  
 (EPSG dataset coordinate operation method code 9839)

The orthographic vertical perspective is a special case of the vertical perspective with the viewing point at infinity ( $h_v = \infty$ ). Therefore, all projection "rays" are parallel to one another and all are perpendicular to the tangent plane. Since the rays are parallel, coordinates in the tangent-plane are the same in any other parallel mapping plane, i.e. are consistent for any value of  $h_o$ , which therefore becomes irrelevant to the forward formulas.

The orthographic vertical perspective forward conversion from 3D geographic coordinates latitude, longitude and ellipsoidal height ( $\varphi$ ,  $\lambda$ ,  $h$ ) to Easting (E) and Northing (N) is given by:

$$E = U = \lim_{h_v \rightarrow \infty} (U h_v / (h_v - W), h_v \rightarrow \infty)$$

$$N = V = \lim_{h_v \rightarrow \infty} (V h_v / (h_v - W), h_v \rightarrow \infty)$$

where, as in Sections 2.2.3 and 1.3.17.2:

$$U = (v + h) \cos \varphi \sin (\lambda - \lambda_o)$$

$$V = (v + h) [\sin \varphi \cos \varphi_o - \cos \varphi \sin \varphi_o \cos (\lambda - \lambda_o)] + e^2 (v_o \sin \varphi_o - v \sin \varphi) \cos \varphi_o$$

The reverse calculation from E,N to U,V,W and  $\varphi,\lambda,h$  is indeterminate.

**Example:**

For Projected Coordinate Reference System: WGS 84 / Vertical Perspective (Orthographic case) example

Parameters:

Ellipsoid:	WGS 84	a = 6378137.0 metres	1/f = 298.2572236
	then	e = 0.081819191	

Topographic origin latitude	$\varphi_o$	=	55°00'00.000"N	=	0.95993109 rad
-----------------------------	-------------	---	----------------	---	----------------

Topographic origin longitude	$\lambda_o$	=	5°00'00.000"E	=	0.08726646 rad
------------------------------	-------------	---	---------------	---	----------------

Topographic origin ellipsoidal height	$h_o$	=	200 metres
---------------------------------------	-------	---	------------

Forward calculation for:

Latitude	$\varphi$	=	53°48'33.82"N	=	0.939151101 rad
----------	-----------	---	---------------	---	-----------------

Longitude	$\lambda$	=	2°07'46.38"E	=	0.037167659 rad
-----------	-----------	---	--------------	---	-----------------

Ellipsoidal height	$h$	=	73 metres
--------------------	-----	---	-----------

The projection origin and example point are the same as those used in the general case of the Vertical Perspective in the previous section. Note that the ellipsoidal height at the point to be converted ( $h$ ) is 73 metres. The ellipsoidal height at the topocentric center ( $h_o$ ) is not used in any of the equations for the numerical examples that follow. But  $h_o$  will be used for the reverse case if  $W$  is known (for which a numerical example can be found in Section 2.2.3).

$$e^2 = 0.006694380$$

$$v_o = 6392\,510.727 \text{ m}$$

$$v = 6392\,088.017 \text{ m}$$

Then,

$$E = -189013.869 \text{ m}$$

$$N = -128642.040 \text{ m}$$

### 1.3.18 Orthographic Projection

(EPSG dataset coordinate operation method code 9840)

Most cartographic texts which describe the orthographic projection do so using a spherical development. This section describes an ellipsoidal development. This allows the projected coordinates to be consistent with those for the vertical perspectives described in the previous section (1.3.17). If the projection origin is at the topocentric origin, the ellipsoidal Orthographic Projection is a special case of the orthographic vertical perspective in which the ellipsoid height of all mapped points is zero ( $h = 0$ ). The projection is neither conformal nor equal-area, but near the point of tangency there is no significant distortion. Within 90km of the origin the scale change is less than 1 part in 10,000.

The Orthographic Projection forward conversion from 2D geographic coordinates latitude and longitude ( $\varphi$ ,  $\lambda$ ) and the origin on the ellipsoid ( $\varphi_0$ ,  $\lambda_0$ ) is given by:

$$E = FE + v \cos \varphi \sin (\lambda - \lambda_0)$$

$$N = FN + v [\sin \varphi \cos \varphi_0 - \cos \varphi \sin \varphi_0 \cos (\lambda - \lambda_0)] + e^2 (v_0 \sin \varphi_0 - v \sin \varphi) \cos \varphi_0$$

where

$v$  is the prime vertical radius of curvature at latitude  $\varphi$ ;  $v = a / (1 - e^2 \sin^2 \varphi)^{0.5}$ ,

$v_0$  is the prime vertical radius of curvature at latitude of origin  $\varphi_0$ ;  $v_0 = a / (1 - e^2 \sin^2 \varphi_0)^{0.5}$ ,

$e$  is the eccentricity of the ellipsoid and  $e^2 = (a^2 - b^2) / a^2 = 2f - f^2$

$a$  and  $b$  are the ellipsoidal semi-major and semi-minor axes,

$1/f$  is the inverse flattening, and

the latitude and longitude of the projection origin are  $\varphi_0$  and  $\lambda_0$ .

These formulas are similar to those for the orthographic case of the vertical perspective (section 1.3.17.3) except that, for the Orthographic Projection given here,  $h = 0$  and the term  $(v + h)$  reduces to  $v$ . The projection origin is at the topocentric system origin  $\varphi_0$ ,  $\lambda_0$  with false origin coordinates  $FE$  and  $FN$ .

For the reverse formulas for latitude and longitude corresponding to a given Easting ( $E$ ) and Northing ( $N$ ), iteration is required as the prime vertical radius ( $v$ ) is a function of latitude.

Begin by seeding the iteration with the center of projection (or some better guess):

$$\varphi = \varphi_0$$

$$\lambda = \lambda_0$$

Enter the iteration here with the (next) best estimates of  $\varphi$  and  $\lambda$ . Then solve for the radii of curvature in the prime vertical ( $v$ ) and meridian ( $\rho$ ):

$$v = a / (1 - e^2 \sin^2 \varphi)^{0.5}$$

$$\rho = a (1 - e^2) / (1 - e^2 \sin^2 \varphi)^{1.5}$$

Compute test values of  $E$  and  $N$  ( $E'$  and  $N'$ ) using the forward equations:

$$E' = FE + v \cos \varphi \sin (\lambda - \lambda_0)$$

$$N' = FN + v [\sin \varphi \cos \varphi_0 - \cos \varphi \sin \varphi_0 \cos (\lambda - \lambda_0)] + e^2 (v_0 \sin \varphi_0 - v \sin \varphi) \cos \varphi_0$$

Partially differentiate the forward equations to solve for the elements of the Jacobian matrix:

$$J_{11} = \partial E / \partial \varphi = -\rho \sin \varphi \sin (\lambda - \lambda_0)$$

$$J_{12} = \partial E / \partial \lambda = \nu \cos \varphi \cos (\lambda - \lambda_0)$$

$$J_{21} = \partial N / \partial \varphi = \rho (\cos \varphi \cos \varphi_0 + \sin \varphi \sin \varphi_0 \cos (\lambda - \lambda_0))$$

$$J_{22} = \partial N / \partial \lambda = \nu \sin \varphi_0 \cos \varphi \sin (\lambda - \lambda_0)$$

Solve for the determinant of the Jacobian:

$$D = J_{11} J_{22} - J_{12} J_{21}$$

Solve the northerly and easterly differences this iteration:

$$\Delta E = E - E'$$

$$\Delta N = N - N'$$

Adjust the latitude and longitude for the next iteration by inverting the Jacobian and multiplying by the differences:

$$\varphi = \varphi + (J_{22} \Delta E - J_{12} \Delta N) / D$$

$$\lambda = \lambda + (-J_{21} \Delta E + J_{11} \Delta N) / D$$

Return to the entry point with new estimates of latitude and longitude and iterate until the change in  $\varphi$  and  $\lambda$  is not significant.

**Example:**

For Projected Coordinate Reference System: WGS 84 / Orthographic Projection example

Parameters:

Ellipsoid:	WGS 84	$a = 6378137.0$ metres	$1/f = 298.2572236$
		then $e = 0.081819191$	

Latitude of natural origin	$\varphi_0$	$55^\circ 00' 00.000'' N$	=	$0.95993109$ rad
Longitude of natural origin	$\lambda_0$	$5^\circ 00' 00.000'' E$	=	$0.08726646$ rad
False easting	FE	0 metres		
False northing	FN	0 metres		

Forward calculation for:

Latitude	$\varphi$	=	$53^\circ 48' 33.82'' N$	=	$0.939151101$ rad
Longitude	$\lambda$	=	$2^\circ 07' 46.38'' E$	=	$0.037167659$ rad

Note that ellipsoidal heights at the topocentric center ( $h_0$ ) and at the point to be converted ( $h$ ) may be the same as in the Vertical Perspective examples in the previous section. Neither enter the computations that follow.

$$e^2 = 0.006694380$$

$$\nu_0 = 6392\ 510.73 \text{ m}$$

$$\nu = 6392\ 088.02 \text{ m}$$

Then,

$$\text{Easting, } E = -189\ 011.711 \text{ m}$$

$$\text{Northing, } N = -128\ 640.567 \text{ m}$$

Reverse calculation for these E, N coordinates into latitude ( $\varphi$ ) and longitude ( $\lambda$ ) is iterative. The following values are constant every iteration.

$$e^2 = 0.006694380$$

$$\nu_0 = 6392\ 510.73 \text{ m}$$

$$\varphi_0 = 0.95993109 \text{ rad}$$

$$\lambda_0 = 0.08726646 \text{ rad}$$

The following values change during 4 iterations to convergence:

	1	2	3	4
Latitude	0.95993109	0.9397628327	0.9391516179	0.9391511016
Longitude	0.08726646	0.0357167858	0.0371688977	0.0371676590
v	6392510.727	6392100.544	6392088.028	6392088.017
$\rho$	6378368.440	6377140.690	6377103.229	6377103.198
E'	0	-194318.490	-189006.908	-189011.711
N'	0	-124515.840	-128637.469	-128640.567
J <sub>11</sub>	0	265312.746	257728.730	257734.999
J <sub>12</sub>	3666593.522	3766198.868	3769619.566	3769621.986
J <sub>21</sub>	6378368.440	6370240.831	6370437.125	6370436.766
J <sub>22</sub>	0	-159176.388	-154825.395	-154829.329
D	-2338688440386	-24033825331760	-24054027385585	-24054043431047
$\Delta N$	-128640.567	-4124.727	-3.098	0
$\Delta E$	-189011.711	5306.779	-4.803	0
Latitude	0.9397628327	0.9391516179	0.9391511016	0.9391511016
Longitude	0.0357167858	0.0371688977	0.0371676590	0.0371676590

which results in:

Latitude	$\varphi$	=	0.939151102 rad	=	53°48'33.82"N
Longitude	$\lambda$	=	0.037167659 rad	=	2°07'46.38"E

## **2 Formulas for Coordinate Operations other than Map Projections**

### **2.1 Introduction**

Several types of coordinate reference system are recognised. The previous section discussed conversions of coordinates between geographic 2-dimensional and projected coordinate reference systems. The projected system is derived from its base geographic system.

Geographic coordinates (latitude and longitude) are calculated on a model of the earth. They are only unique and unambiguous when the model and its relationship to the real earth is identified. This is accomplished through a geodetic datum. A change of geodetic datum changes the geographic coordinates of a point. A geodetic datum combined with description of coordinate system gives a coordinate reference system. Coordinates are only unambiguous when their coordinate reference system is identified and defined.

It is frequently required to change coordinates derived in one geographic coordinate reference system to values expressed in another. For example, land and marine seismic surveys are nowadays most conveniently positioned by GPS satellite in the WGS 84 geographic coordinate reference system, whereas coordinates may be required referenced to the national geodetic reference system in use for the country concerned. It may therefore be necessary to transform the observed WGS 84 data to the national geodetic reference system in order to avoid discrepancies caused by the change of geodetic datum.

Some transformation methods operate directly between geographic coordinates. Others are between geocentric coordinates (3-dimensional Cartesian coordinates where the coordinate system origin is fixed at the centre of the earth). The second part of this Guidance Note covers conversions and transformations between geographic coordinate reference systems, both directly and indirectly through geocentric systems. Some of these methods (polynomial family) may also be encountered for use between other types of coordinate reference systems, for example directly between projected coordinate reference systems. This second part also describes transformations of vertical coordinates.

Coordinate handling software may execute more complicated operations, concatenating a number of steps linking together geographic, projected and/or engineering coordinates referenced to different datums. Other than as mentioned above, these concatenated operations are beyond the scope of this document.

Note that it is very important to ensure that the signs of the parameter values used in the transformations are correct in respect of the transformation being executed. Preferably one should always express transformations in terms of "From"....."To"..... thus avoiding the confusion which may result from interpreting a dash as a minus sign or vice versa.

## 2.2 Coordinate Conversions other than Map Projections

### 2.2.1 Geographic/Geocentric conversions

(EPSG dataset coordinate operation method code 9602)

Latitude,  $\varphi$ , and Longitude,  $\lambda$ , and ellipsoidal height,  $h$ , in terms of a 3-dimensional geographic coordinate reference system may be expressed in terms of a geocentric (earth centred) Cartesian coordinate reference system X, Y, Z with the Z axis corresponding with the earth's rotation axis positive northwards, the X axis through the intersection of the prime meridian and equator, and the Y axis through the intersection of the equator with longitude 90°E. The geographic and geocentric systems are based on the same geodetic datum.

Geocentric coordinate reference systems are conventionally taken to be defined with the X axis through the intersection of the Greenwich meridian and equator. This requires that the equivalent geographic coordinate reference system be based on the Greenwich meridian. In application of the formulas below, geographic coordinate reference systems based on a non-Greenwich prime meridian should first be transformed to their Greenwich equivalent. Geocentric coordinates X, Y and Z take their units from the units for the ellipsoid axes (a and b). As it is conventional for X, Y and Z to be in metres, if the ellipsoid axis dimensions are given in another linear unit they should first be converted to metres.

If the ellipsoidal semi major axis is **a**, semi minor axis **b**, and inverse flattening **1/f**, then

$$\begin{aligned} X &= (v + h) \cos \varphi \cos \lambda \\ Y &= (v + h) \cos \varphi \sin \lambda \\ Z &= [(1 - e^2)v + h] \sin \varphi \end{aligned}$$

where  $v$  is the prime vertical radius of curvature at latitude  $\varphi$  and is equal to

$$v = a / (1 - e^2 \sin^2 \varphi)^{0.5},$$

$\varphi$  and  $\lambda$  are respectively the latitude and longitude (related to the prime meridian) of the point,

$h$  is height above the ellipsoid, (see note below), and

$$e \text{ is the eccentricity of the ellipsoid where } e^2 = (a^2 - b^2)/a^2 = 2f - f^2$$

*(Note that  $h$  is the height above the ellipsoid. This is the height value that is delivered by GPS satellite observations but is not the gravity-related height value which is normally used for national mapping and levelling operations. The gravity-related height ( $H$ ) is usually the height above mean sea level or an alternative level reference for the country. If one starts with a gravity-related height  $H$ , it will be necessary to convert it to an ellipsoid height ( $h$ ) before using the above transformation formulas. See section 2.4.5 below. For the WGS 84 ellipsoid the difference between ellipsoid and mean sea level can vary between values of -100m in the Sri Lanka area to +80m in the North Atlantic.)*

For the reverse conversion, Cartesian coordinates in the geocentric coordinate reference system may be converted to geographic coordinates in terms of the geographic 3D coordinate reference system by:

$$\begin{aligned} \varphi &= \text{atan} [(Z + e^2 v \sin \varphi) / (X^2 + Y^2)^{0.5}] \text{ by iteration} \\ \lambda &= \text{atan } Y/X \\ h &= X \sec \lambda \sec \varphi - v \end{aligned}$$

where  $\lambda$  is relative to the Greenwich prime meridian.

To avoid iteration for  $\varphi$  it may alternatively be found from:

$$\varphi = \text{atan} [(Z + \varepsilon b \sin^3 q) / (p - e^2 a \cos^3 q)]$$

where

$$\varepsilon = e^2 / (1 - e^2)$$

$$b = a(1 - f)$$

$$p = (X^2 + Y^2)^{0.5}$$

$$q = \text{atan} [(Z a) / (p b)]$$

Then  $h$  may more conveniently be found from

$$h = (p / \cos \varphi) - v$$

**Example:**

Consider a North Sea point with position derived by GPS satellite in the WGS 84 coordinate reference system. The WGS 84 ellipsoid parameters are:

$$\begin{aligned} a &= 6378\,137.000\text{m} \\ 1/f &= 298.2572236 \end{aligned}$$

then

$$\begin{aligned} e^2 &= 0.006694380 \\ \varepsilon &= 0.006739497 \\ b &= 6356\,752.314\text{ m} \end{aligned}$$

Using the reverse direction direct formulas above, the conversion of WGS 84 geocentric coordinates of

$$\begin{aligned} X &= 3771\,793.968\text{ m} \\ Y &= 140\,253.342\text{ m} \\ Z &= 5124\,304.349\text{ m} \end{aligned}$$

is:

$$\begin{aligned} p &= 3774400.712 \\ q &= 0.937546077 \\ \varphi &= 0.939151101\text{ rad} \\ v &= 6392088.017 \end{aligned}$$

Then WGS 84 geographic 3D coordinates are:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{latitude } \varphi &= 53^\circ 48' 33.820'' \\ &\quad \text{N} \\ \text{longitude } \lambda &= 2^\circ 07' 46.380'' \text{E} \\ \text{and ellipsoidal height } h &= 73.0\text{m} \end{aligned}$$

**2.2.2 Geocentric/topocentric conversions**

(EPSG dataset coordinate operation method code 9836)

A topocentric coordinate system is a 3-D Cartesian system having mutually perpendicular axes U, V, W with an origin on or near the surface of the Earth. The U-axis is locally east, the V-axis is locally north and the W-axis is up forming a right-handed coordinate system. It is applied in two particular settings:

(i) the height axis W is chosen to be along the direction of gravity at the topocentric origin. The other two axes are then in the horizontal plane. A special case of this, often applied in engineering applications, is when the topocentric origin is on the vertical datum surface; then topocentric height W approximates to gravity-related height H.

(ii) the topocentric height axis W is chosen to be the direction through the topocentric origin and along perpendicular to the surface of the ellipsoid. The other two topocentric axes (U and V) are in the "topocentric plane", a plane parallel to the tangent to the ellipsoid surface at the topocentric origin and passing through the topocentric origin (see figure 11 below). The coordinates defining the topocentric origin will usually be expressed in ellipsoidal terms as latitude  $\varphi_0$ , longitude  $\lambda_0$  and ellipsoidal height  $h_0$  but may alternatively be expressed as geocentric Cartesian coordinates  $X_0, Y_0, Z_0$ . In this context the geocentric coordinates of the topocentric origin should not be confused with those of the geocentric origin where  $X=Y=Z=0$ .

A special case of this is when the topocentric origin is chosen to be exactly on the ellipsoid surface and  $h_0 = 0$ . Then the topocentric U and V axes are in the ellipsoid tangent plane and at (and only at) the topocentric origin topocentric height W = ellipsoidal height h.



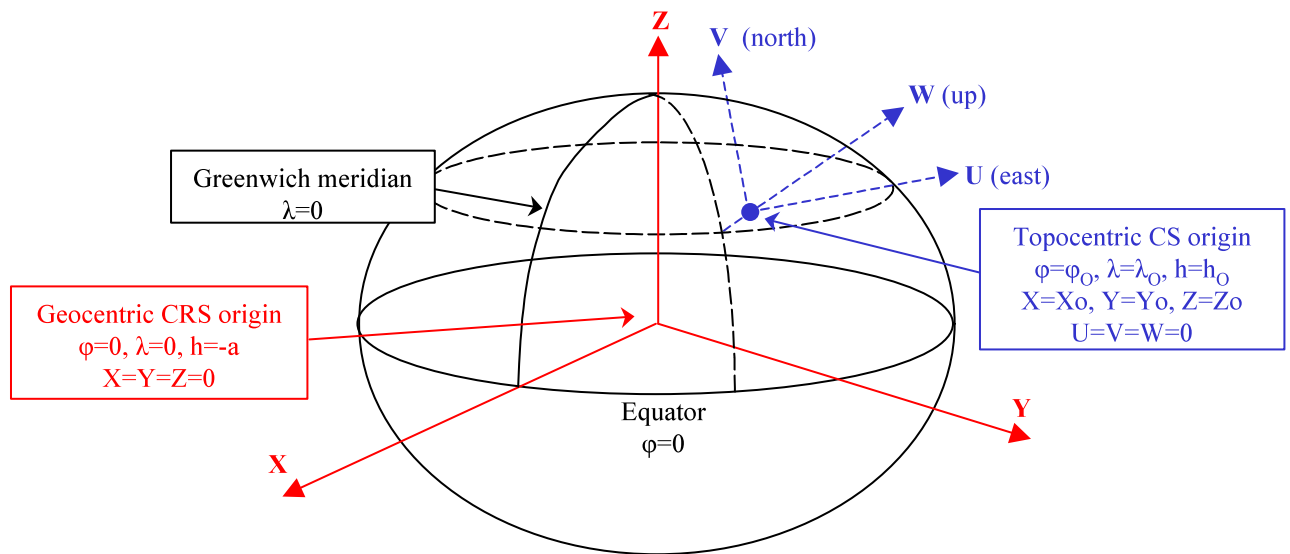


Figure 10. Topocentric and geocentric systems

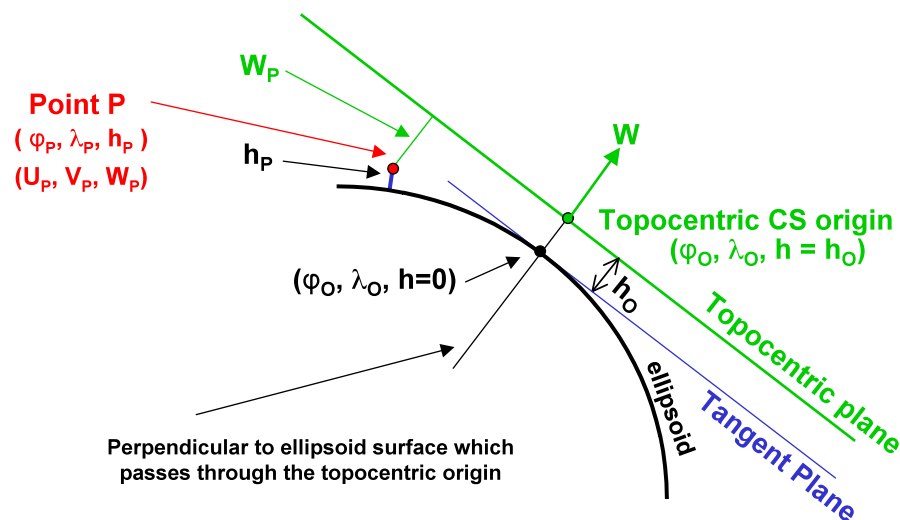


Figure 11. Topocentric and ellipsoidal heights

In this and the following section we are concerned with the second of the two settings for topocentric coordinate systems where the system is associated with the ellipsoid and a particular geodetic datum. The application of such topocentric coordinates includes scalable mapping and visualisation systems as described in section 1.3.17. The following section covers the conversion between ellipsoidal coordinates and topocentric coordinates. The remainder of this section describes how geocentric coordinates X, Y, Z may be converted into topocentric coordinates U, V, W given the geocentric coordinates of the topocentric CS origin  $(X_0, Y_0, Z_0)$ .

First it is necessary to derive ellipsoidal values  $\varphi_0, \lambda_0$  of the topocentric origin from their geocentric values  $X_0, Y_0, Z_0$  through the reverse formulas given in Section 2.2.1 above. (The value  $h_0$  for the ellipsoidal height of the topocentric origin is not required in what follows.)

Then topocentric coordinates [U, V, W] are computed as follows:

$$\begin{pmatrix} U \\ V \\ W \end{pmatrix} = \mathbf{R} * \begin{pmatrix} X \\ Y \\ Z \end{pmatrix} - \begin{pmatrix} X_0 \\ Y_0 \\ Z_0 \end{pmatrix}$$

where,

$$\mathbf{R} = \begin{pmatrix} -\sin \lambda_0 & \cos \lambda_0 & 0 \\ -\sin \varphi_0 \cos \lambda_0 & -\sin \varphi_0 \sin \lambda_0 & \cos \varphi_0 \\ \cos \varphi_0 \cos \lambda_0 & \cos \varphi_0 \sin \lambda_0 & \sin \varphi_0 \end{pmatrix}$$

Or, expressed as scalar equations:

$$\begin{aligned} U &= -(X-X_0) \sin \lambda_0 + (Y-Y_0) \cos \lambda_0 \\ V &= -(X-X_0) \sin \varphi_0 \cos \lambda_0 - (Y-Y_0) \sin \varphi_0 \sin \lambda_0 + (Z-Z_0) \cos \varphi_0 \\ W &= (X-X_0) \cos \varphi_0 \cos \lambda_0 + (Y-Y_0) \cos \varphi_0 \sin \lambda_0 + (Z-Z_0) \sin \varphi_0 \end{aligned}$$

The reverse formulas to calculate geocentric coordinates from topocentric coordinates are:

$$\begin{pmatrix} X \\ Y \\ Z \end{pmatrix} = \mathbf{R}^{-1} * \begin{pmatrix} U \\ V \\ W \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} X_0 \\ Y_0 \\ Z_0 \end{pmatrix}$$

where,

$$\mathbf{R}^{-1} = \mathbf{R}^T = \begin{pmatrix} -\sin \lambda_0 & -\sin \varphi_0 \cos \lambda_0 & \cos \varphi_0 \cos \lambda_0 \\ \cos \lambda_0 & -\sin \varphi_0 \sin \lambda_0 & \cos \varphi_0 \sin \lambda_0 \\ 0 & \cos \varphi_0 & \sin \varphi_0 \end{pmatrix}$$

and, as for the forward case,  $\varphi_0$  and  $\lambda_0$  are calculated through the formulas in Section 2.2.1.

Or, expressed as scalar equations:

$$\begin{aligned} X &= X_0 - U \sin \lambda_0 - V \sin \varphi_0 \cos \lambda_0 + W \cos \varphi_0 \cos \lambda_0 \\ Y &= Y_0 + U \cos \lambda_0 - V \sin \varphi_0 \sin \lambda_0 + W \cos \varphi_0 \sin \lambda_0 \\ Z &= Z_0 + V \cos \varphi_0 + W \sin \varphi_0 \end{aligned}$$

**Example:**

For Geocentric CRS = WGS 84 (EPSG CRS code 4978)  
 and  
 Topocentric origin  $X_o$  = 3652 755.3058 m  
 Topocentric origin  $Y_o$  = 319 574.6799 m  
 Topocentric origin  $Z_o$  = 5201 547.3536 m

Ellipsoid parameters:  $a = 6378137.0$  metres  $1/f = 298.2572236$

First calculate additional ellipsoid parameters:

$$e^2 = 0.006694380 \quad \epsilon = 0.006739497 \quad b = 6356752.314$$

Next, derive  $\varphi_o, \lambda_o$  from  $X_o, Y_o, Z_o$  by the formulas given in Section 2.2.1:

$$\begin{aligned} p &= 3666708.2376 \\ q &= 0.9583523313 \\ \varphi_o &= 0.9599310885 \quad \text{rad} \\ \lambda_o &= 0.0872664625 \quad \text{rad} \end{aligned}$$

Forward calculation for point with geocentric coordinates:

$$X = 3771\ 793.968 \text{ m} \quad Y = 140\ 253.342 \text{ m} \quad Z = 5124\ 304.349 \text{ m}$$

gives topocentric coordinates

$$U = -189\ 013.869 \text{ m} \quad V = -128\ 642.040 \text{ m} \quad W = -4\ 220.171 \text{ m}$$

The reverse calculation contains no intermediate terms other than those solved for above and is a trivial reversal of the forward.

**2.2.3 Geographic/topocentric conversions**

(EPSG dataset coordinate operation method code 9837)

Topocentric coordinates may be derived from geographic coordinates indirectly by concatenating the geographic/geocentric conversion described in 2.2.1 above with the geocentric/topocentric conversion described in 2.2.2 above. Alternatively the conversion may be made directly:

To convert latitude  $\varphi$ , longitude  $\lambda$  and ellipsoidal height  $h$  into topocentric coordinates  $U, V, W$ :

$$\begin{aligned} U &= (v + h) \cos \varphi \sin (\lambda - \lambda_o) \\ V &= (v + h) [\sin \varphi \cos \varphi_o - \cos \varphi \sin \varphi_o \cos (\lambda - \lambda_o)] + e^2 (v_o \sin \varphi_o - v \sin \varphi) \cos \varphi_o \\ W &= (v + h) [\sin \varphi \sin \varphi_o + \cos \varphi \cos \varphi_o \cos (\lambda - \lambda_o)] + e^2 (v_o \sin \varphi_o - v \sin \varphi) \sin \varphi_o - (v_o + h_o) \end{aligned}$$

where  $\varphi_o, \lambda_o, h_o$  are the ellipsoidal coordinates of the topocentric origin

and  $v$  is the radius of curvature in the prime vertical at latitude  $\varphi = a / (1 - e^2 \sin^2 \varphi)^{0.5}$   
 $v_o$  is the radius of curvature in the prime vertical at latitude  $\varphi_o = a / (1 - e^2 \sin^2 \varphi_o)^{0.5}$   
 $e$  is the eccentricity of the ellipsoid where  $e^2 = (a^2 - b^2) / a^2 = 2f - f^2$

The reverse formulae to convert topocentric coordinates ( $U, V, W$ ) into latitude, longitude and ellipsoidal height ( $\varphi, \lambda, h$ ) first draws on the reverse case of section 2.2.2 to derive geocentric coordinates  $X, Y, Z$  and then on the reverse case in section 2.2.1 to derive latitude, longitude and height.

First,

$$\begin{aligned} X &= X_0 - U \sin \lambda_0 - V \sin \varphi_0 \cos \lambda_0 + W \cos \varphi_0 \cos \lambda_0 \\ Y &= Y_0 + U \cos \lambda_0 - V \sin \varphi_0 \sin \lambda_0 + W \cos \varphi_0 \sin \lambda_0 \\ Z &= Z_0 + V \cos \varphi_0 + W \sin \varphi_0 \end{aligned}$$

where,

$$\begin{aligned} X_0 &= (v_0 + h_0) \cos \varphi_0 \cos \lambda_0 \\ Y_0 &= (v_0 + h_0) \cos \varphi_0 \sin \lambda_0 \\ Z_0 &= [(1 - e^2) v_0 + h_0] \sin \varphi_0 \end{aligned}$$

$\varphi_0, \lambda_0, h_0$  are the ellipsoidal coordinates of the topocentric origin,  
 $v_0$  is the radius of curvature in the prime vertical at latitude  $\varphi_0 = a / (1 - e^2 \sin^2 \varphi_0)^{0.5}$ , and  
 $e$  is the eccentricity of the ellipsoid where  $e^2 = (a^2 - b^2) / a^2 = 2f - f^2$ .

Then,

$$\begin{aligned} \varphi &= \text{atan}[(Z + \varepsilon b \sin^3 q) / (p - e^2 a \cos^3 q)] \\ \lambda &= \text{atan } Y/X \end{aligned}$$

where

$$\begin{aligned} \varepsilon &= e^2 / (1 - e^2) \\ b &= a(1 - f) \\ p &= (X^2 + Y^2)^{0.5} \\ q &= \text{atan}[(Z a) / (p b)] \end{aligned}$$

$\lambda$  is relative to the Greenwich prime meridian.

and

$$h = (p / \cos \varphi) - v$$

where

$$v \text{ is the radius of curvature in the prime vertical at latitude } \varphi = a / (1 - e^2 \sin^2 \varphi)^{0.5}$$

**Example:**

For Geographic 3D CRS = WGS 84 (EPSG CRS code 4979)

and

Topocentric origin latitude	$\varphi_0$	55°00'00.000"N	=	0.95993109 rad
Topocentric origin longitude	$\lambda_0$	5°00'00.000"E	=	0.08726646 rad
Topocentric origin ellipsoidal height	$h_0$	200 metres		

Ellipsoid parameters:  $a = 6378137.0$  metres  $1/f = 298.2572236$

First calculate additional ellipsoid parameter  $e^2$  and radius of curvature  $v_0$  at the topocentric origin:

$$e^2 = 0.006694380 \quad v_0 = 6392510.727$$

Forward calculation for:

Latitude	$\varphi$	=	53°48'33.82"N	=	0.93915110 rad
Longitude	$\lambda$	=	2°07'46.38"E	=	0.03716765 rad
Height	$h$	=	73.0 metres		

$$v = 6392088.017$$

then

$U$	=	-189 013.869 m
$V$	=	-128 642.040 m
$W$	=	-4 220.171 m

Reverse calculation for:

$$\begin{aligned} U &= -189\,013.869 \text{ m} \\ V &= -128\,642.040 \text{ m} \\ W &= -4\,220.171 \text{ m} \end{aligned}$$

First calculate additional ellipsoid parameter  $e^2$  and radius of curvature  $v_0$  at the topocentric origin:

$$e^2 = 0.006694380 \quad v_0 = 6392510.727$$

then the following intermediate terms:

$$\begin{array}{ll} X_0 = 3652\,755.306 & \varepsilon = 0.0067394967 \\ Y_0 = 319\,574.680 & b = 6356\,752.314 \\ Z_0 = 5201\,547.353 & p = 3774\,400.712 \\ X = 3771\,793.968 & q = 0.937549875 \\ Y = 140\,253.342 & \varphi = 0.9391511015 \text{ rad} \\ Z = 5124\,304.349 & v = 6392\,088.017 \\ & \lambda = 0.03716765908 \text{ rad} \end{array}$$

for a final result of:

$$\begin{array}{ll} \text{Latitude } \varphi &= 53^\circ 48' 33.820'' \text{N} \\ \text{Longitude } \lambda &= 2^\circ 07' 46.380'' \text{E} \\ \text{Height } h &= 73.0 \text{ metres} \end{array}$$

#### **2.2.4 Geographic 3D to 2D conversions**

(EPSG dataset coordinate operation method code 9659)

The forward case is trivial. A 3-dimensional geographic coordinate reference system comprising of geodetic latitude, geodetic longitude and ellipsoidal height is converted to its 2-dimensional subset by the simple expedient of dropping the height.

The reverse conversion, from 2D to 3D, is indeterminate. It is however a requirement when a geographic 2D coordinate reference system is to be transformed using a geocentric method which is 3-dimensional (see section 2.4.4.1 below). In practice an artificial ellipsoidal height is created and appended to the geographic 2D coordinate reference system to create a geographic 3D coordinate reference system referenced to the same geodetic datum. The assumed ellipsoidal height is usually either set to the gravity-related height of a position in a compound coordinate reference system, or set to zero. As long as the height chosen is within a few kilometres of sea level, no error will be induced into the horizontal position resulting from the later geocentric transformation; the vertical coordinate will however be meaningless.

##### **Example:**

A location in the ETRS89 Geographic 3D coordinate reference system

$$\begin{array}{ll} \text{latitude } \varphi_s &= 53^\circ 48' 33.82'' \text{N} \\ \text{longitude } \lambda_s &= 2^\circ 07' 46.38'' \text{E} \\ \text{and ellipsoidal height } h_s &= 73.0 \text{m} \end{array}$$

is converted to the ETRS89 Geographic 2D coordinate reference system as

$$\begin{array}{ll} \text{latitude } \varphi_s &= 53^\circ 48' 33.82'' \text{N} \\ \text{longitude } \lambda_s &= 2^\circ 07' 46.38'' \text{E} \end{array}$$

For the reverse conversion of the same point in the ETRS89 Geographic 2D coordinate reference system with horizontal coordinates of

$$\begin{array}{ll} \text{latitude } \varphi_s &= 53^\circ 48' 33.82'' \text{N} \\ \text{longitude } \lambda_s &= 2^\circ 07' 46.38'' \text{E} \end{array}$$

an arbitrary value is given to the ellipsoidal height resulting in coordinates in the ETRS89 Geographic 3D coordinate reference system of

$$\begin{aligned} \text{latitude } \varphi_s &= 53^\circ 48' 33.82'' \text{N} \\ \text{longitude } \lambda_s &= 2^\circ 07' 46.38'' \text{E} \\ \text{and ellipsoidal height } h_s &= 0.0 \text{m} \end{aligned}$$

## **2.3 Coordinate Operation Methods that can be conversions or transformations**

In theory, certain coordinate operation methods do not readily fit the ISO 19111 classification of being either a coordinate conversion (no change of datum involved) or a coordinate transformation. These methods change coordinates directly from one coordinate reference system to another and may be applied with or without change of datum, depending upon whether the source and target coordinate reference systems are based on the same or different datums. In practice, most usage of these methods does in fact include a change of datum. OGP follows the general mathematical usage of these methods and classifies them as transformations.

### **2.3.1 Polynomial transformations**

*Note: In the sections that follow, the general mathematical symbols  $X$  and  $Y$  representing the axes of a coordinate reference system must not be confused with the specific axis abbreviations or axis order in particular coordinate reference systems.*

#### **2.3.1.1 General case**

Polynomial transformations between two coordinate reference systems are typically applied in cases where one or both of the coordinate reference systems exhibits lack of homogeneity in orientation and scale. The small distortions are then approximated by polynomial functions in latitude and longitude or in easting and northing. Depending on the degree of variability in the distortions, approximation may be carried out using polynomials of degree 2, 3, or higher. In the case of transformations between two projected coordinate reference systems, the additional distortions resulting from the application of two map projections and a datum transformation can be included in a single polynomial approximation function.

Polynomial approximation functions themselves are subject to variations, as different approximation characteristics may be achieved by different polynomial functions. The simplest of all polynomials is the general polynomial function. In order to avoid problems of numerical instability this type of polynomial should be used after reducing the coordinate values in both the source and the target coordinate reference system to 'manageable' numbers, between  $-10$  and  $+10$  at most. This is achieved by working with offsets relative to a central evaluation point, scaled to the desired number range by applying a scaling factor to the coordinate offsets.

Hence an evaluation point is chosen in the source coordinate reference system ( $X_{S0}$ ,  $Y_{S0}$ ) and in the target coordinate reference system ( $X_{T0}$ ,  $Y_{T0}$ ). Often these two sets of coordinates do not refer to the same physical point but two points are chosen that have the same coordinate values in both the source and the target coordinate reference system. (When the two points have identical coordinates, these parameters are conveniently eliminated from the formulas, but the general case where the coordinates differ is given here).

The selection of an evaluation point in each of the two coordinate reference systems allows the point coordinates in both to be reduced as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} X_S - X_{S0} \\ Y_S - Y_{S0} \end{aligned}$$

and

$$X_T - X_{T0}$$

$$Y_T - Y_{T0}$$

These coordinate differences are expressed in their own unit of measure, which may not be the same as that of the corresponding coordinate reference system.<sup>5)</sup>

A further reduction step is usually necessary to bring these coordinate differences into the desired numerical range by applying a scaling factor to the coordinate differences in order to reduce them to a value range that may be applied to the polynomial formulae below without introducing numerical precision errors:

$$U = m_S (X_S - X_{S0})$$

$$V = m_S (Y_S - Y_{S0})$$

where

$X_S, Y_S$  are coordinates in the source coordinate reference system,

$X_{S0}, Y_{S0}$  are coordinates of the evaluation point in the source coordinate reference system,

$m_S$  is the scaling factor applied the coordinate differences in the source coordinate reference system.

The normalised coordinates  $U$  and  $V$  of the point whose coordinates are to be transformed are used as input to the polynomial transformation formula. In order to control the numerical range of the polynomial coefficients  $A_n$  and  $B_n$  the output coordinate differences  $dX$  and  $dY$  are multiplied by a scaling factor,  $m_T$ .

$$\begin{aligned}
 m_T \cdot dX &= A_0 + A_1U + A_2V + A_3U^2 + A_4UV + A_5V^2 && \text{(to degree 2)} \\
 &+ A_6U^3 + A_7U^2V + A_8UV^2 + A_9V^3 && \text{(degree 3 terms)} \\
 &+ A_{10}U^4 + A_{11}U^3V + A_{12}U^2V^2 + A_{13}UV^3 + A_{14}V^4 && \text{(degree 4 terms)} \\
 &+ A_{15}U^5 + A_{16}U^4V + A_{17}U^3V^2 + A_{18}U^2V^3 + A_{19}UV^4 + A_{20}V^5 && \text{(degree 5 terms)} \\
 &+ A_{21}U^6 + A_{22}U^5V + A_{23}U^4V^2 + A_{24}U^3V^3 + A_{25}U^2V^4 + A_{26}UV^5 + A_{27}V^6 && \text{(degree 6 terms)} \\
 &+ \dots + A_{104}V^{13} && \text{(degree 13 terms)} \\
 \\
 m_T \cdot dY &= B_0 + B_1U + B_2V + B_3U^2 + B_4UV + B_5V^2 && \text{(to degree 2)} \\
 &+ B_6U^3 + B_7U^2V + B_8UV^2 + B_9V^3 && \text{(degree 3 terms)} \\
 &+ B_{10}U^4 + B_{11}U^3V + B_{12}U^2V^2 + B_{13}UV^3 + B_{14}V^4 && \text{(degree 4 terms)} \\
 &+ B_{15}U^5 + B_{16}U^4V + B_{17}U^3V^2 + B_{18}U^2V^3 + B_{19}UV^4 + B_{20}V^5 && \text{(degree 5 terms)} \\
 &+ B_{21}U^6 + B_{22}U^5V + B_{23}U^4V^2 + B_{24}U^3V^3 + B_{25}U^2V^4 + B_{26}UV^5 + B_{27}V^6 && \text{(degree 6 terms)} \\
 &+ \dots + B_{104}V^{13} && \text{(degree 13 terms)}
 \end{aligned}$$

from which  $dX$  and  $dY$  are evaluated. These will be in the units of the target coordinate reference system.

In the EPSG dataset, the polynomial coefficients are given as parameters of the form  $Aumvn$  and  $Bumvn$ , where  $m$  is the power to which  $U$  is raised and  $n$  is the power to which  $V$  is raised. For example,  $A_{17}$  is represented as coordinate operation parameter  $Au3v2$ .

The relationship between the two coordinate reference systems can now be written as follows:

$$(X_T - X_{T0}) = (X_S - X_{S0}) + dX$$

$$(Y_T - Y_{T0}) = (Y_S - Y_{S0}) + dY$$

or

$$X_T = X_S - X_{S0} + X_{T0} + dX$$

$$Y_T = Y_S - Y_{S0} + Y_{T0} + dY$$

where:

$X_T, Y_T$  are coordinates in the target coordinate reference system,

120120\_\_\_\_\_

<sup>5)</sup> If the source and/or the target coordinate reference system are geographic, the coordinates themselves may be expressed in sexagesimal degrees (degrees, minutes, seconds), which cannot be directly processed by a mathematical formula.

$X_S, Y_S$  are coordinates in the source coordinate reference system,  
 $X_{SO}, Y_{SO}$  are coordinates of the evaluation point in the source coordinate reference system,  
 $X_{TO}, Y_{TO}$  are coordinates of the evaluation point in the target coordinate reference system,  
 $dX, dY$  are derived through the scaled polynomial formulas.

Other (arguably better) approximating polynomials are described in mathematical textbooks such as “*Theory and applications of numerical analysis*”, by G.M. Phillips and P.J. Taylor (Academic Press, 1973).

**Example: General polynomial of degree 6** (EPSG dataset coordinate operation method code 9648)

For coordinate transformation TM75 to ETRS89 (1)

Ordinate 1 of evaluation point  $X_O$  in source CRS:  $X_{SO} = \varphi_{SO} = 53^\circ 30' 00.000''N = +53.5$  degrees  
 Ordinate 2 of evaluation point  $Y_O$  in source CRS:  $Y_{SO} = \lambda_{SO} = 7^\circ 42' 00.000''W = -7.7$  degrees  
 Ordinate 1 of evaluation point  $X_O$  in target CRS :  $X_{TO} = \varphi_{TO} = 53^\circ 30' 00.000''N = +53.5$  degrees  
 Ordinate 2 of evaluation point  $Y_O$  in target CRS :  $Y_{SO} = \lambda_{TO} = 7^\circ 42' 00.000''W = -7.7$  degrees  
 Scaling factor for source CRS coordinate differences:  $m_S = 0.1$   
 Scaling factor for target CRS coordinate differences:  $m_T = 3600$

Coefficients (see EPSG dataset transformation code 1041 for complete set of values):

$A_0 = 0.763$                        $A_1 = -4.487$     ...                       $A_{24} = -265.898$     ...                       $A_{27} = 0$   
 $B_0 = -2.810$                        $B_1 = -0.341$     ...                       $B_{24} = -853.950$     ...                       $B_{27} = 0$

Forward calculation for:

Latitude  $\varphi_{TM75} = X_S = 55^\circ 00' 00''N = +55.000$  degrees  
 Longitude  $\lambda_{TM75} = Y_S = 6^\circ 30' 00''W = -6.500$  degrees

$X_S - X_{SO} = \varphi_{TM75} - \varphi_{SO} = 55.0 - 53.5 = 1.5$  degrees  
 $Y_S - Y_{SO} = \lambda_{TM75} - \lambda_{SO} = -6.5 - (-7.7) = 1.2$  degrees

$U = m_S (X_S - X_{SO}) = m_S (\varphi_{TM75} - \varphi_{SO}) = 0.1 * (1.5) = 0.15$   
 $V = m_S (Y_S - Y_{SO}) = m_S (\lambda_{TM75} - \lambda_{SO}) = 0.1 * (1.2) = 0.12$

$dX = (A_0 + A_1U + \dots + A_5V^2 + \dots + A_{24}U^3V^3) / m_T$   
 $= [0.763 + (-4.487 * 0.15) + \dots + (0.183 * 0.12^2) + \dots + (-265.898 * 0.15^3 * 0.12^3)] / 3600$

$dY = (B_0 + B_1U + \dots + B_{24}U^3V^3) / m_T$   
 $= [-2.810 + (-0.341 * 0.15) + \dots + (-853.95 * 0.15^3 * 0.12^3)] / 3600$

	to degree 2	degree 3	degree 4	degree 5	degree 6	Sum / $m_T$
$dX =$	0.1029127	-0.002185407	0.0064009440	0.0014247770	-0.0015507171	0.0000297229
$dY =$	-3.3955340	0.022364019	-0.0230149836	-0.0156886729	-0.0049802364	-0.0009491261

Then Latitude  $\varphi_{ETRS89} = X_T = X_S + dX = 55.0 + 0.00002972$  degrees =  $55^\circ 00' 00.107''N$   
 Longitude  $\lambda_{ETRS89} = Y_T = Y_S + dY = -6.5 - 0.00094913$  degrees =  $6^\circ 30' 03.417''W$

**Polynomial reversibility**

Approximation polynomials are in a strict mathematical sense **not reversible**, i.e. the same polynomial coefficients cannot be used to execute the reverse transformation.

In principle two options are available to execute the reverse transformation:

1. By applying a similar polynomial transformation with a different set of polynomial coefficients for



the reverse polynomial transformation. This would result in a separate forward and reverse transformation being stored in the EPSG dataset (or any other geodetic data repository).

2. By applying the polynomial transformation with the same coefficients but with their signs reversed and then iterate to an acceptable solution, the number of iteration steps being dependent on the desired accuracy. (Note that only the signs of the polynomial coefficients should be reversed and not the coordinates of the evaluation points or the scaling factors!) The iteration procedure is usually described by the information source of the polynomial transformation.

However, under certain conditions, described below, a satisfactory solution for the reverse transformation may be obtained using the forward coefficient values in a single step, rather than multiple step iteration. If such a solution is possible, in the EPSG dataset the polynomial coordinate transformation method is classified as a ***reversible polynomial of degree n***.

A (general) polynomial transformation is reversible only when the following conditions are met.

1. The co-ordinates of source and target evaluation point are (numerically) the same.
2. The unit of measure of the coordinate differences in source and target coordinate reference system are the same.
3. The scaling factors applied to source and target coordinate differences are the same.
4. The spatial variation of the differences between the coordinate reference systems around any given location is sufficiently small.

Clarification on conditions for polynomial reversibility:

Re 1 and 2 - In the reverse transformation the roles of the source and target coordinate reference systems are reversed. Consequently, the co-ordinates of the evaluation point in the *source* coordinate reference system become those in the *target* coordinate reference system in the reverse transformation. Usage of the same transformation parameters for the reverse transformation will therefore only be valid if the evaluation point coordinates are numerically the same in source and target coordinate reference system and in the same units. That is,  $X_{S0} = X_{T0} = X_0$  and  $Y_{S0} = Y_{T0} = Y_0$ .

Re 3 - The same holds for the scaling factors of the source and target coordinate differences and for the units of measure of the coordinate differences. That is,  $m_S = m_T = m$ .

Re 4 - If conditions 1, 2 and 3 are all satisfied it then may be possible to use the forward polynomial algorithm with the forward parameters for the reverse transformation. This is the case if the spatial variations in dX and dY around any given location are sufficiently constant. The signs of the polynomial coefficients are then reversed but the scaling factor and the evaluation point coordinates retain their signs. If these spatial variations in dX and dY are too large, for the reverse transformation iteration would be necessary. It is therefore not the algorithm that determines whether a single step solution is sufficient or whether iteration is required, but the desired accuracy combined with the degree of spatial variability of dX and dY.

An example of a reversible polynomial transformation is ED50 to ED87 (1) for the North Sea. The suitability of this transformation to be described by a reversible polynomial can easily be explained. In the first place both source and target coordinate reference systems are of type geographic 2D. The typical difference in coordinate values between ED50 and ED87 is in the order of 2 metres ( $\approx 10^{-6}$  degrees) in the area of application. The polynomial functions are evaluated about central points with coordinates of 55°N, 0° E in both coordinate reference systems. The reduced coordinate differences (*in degrees*) are used as input parameters to the polynomial functions. The output coordinate differences are corrections to the input coordinate offsets of about  $10^{-6}$  degrees. This difference of several orders of magnitude between input and output values is the property that makes a polynomial function reversible in practice (although not in a formal mathematical sense).

The error made by the polynomial approximation formulas in calculating the reverse correction is of the same order of magnitude as the ratio of output versus input:

*output error*    *output value*

$$\frac{\text{input error}}{\text{input value}} \approx \frac{\text{input error}}{\text{input value}} (\approx 10^{-6})$$

As long as the input values (the coordinate offsets from the evaluation point) are orders of magnitude larger than the output (the corrections), and provided the coefficients are used with changed signs, the polynomial transformation may be considered to be reversible.

Hence the EPSG dataset acknowledges two classes of general polynomial functions, reversible and non-reversible, as distinguished by whether or not the coefficients may be used in both forward and reverse transformations, i.e. are reversible. The EPSG dataset does not describe the iterative solution as a separate algorithm. The iterative solution for the reverse transformation, when applicable, is deemed to be implied by the (forward) algorithm.

**Example: Reversible polynomial of degree 4** (EPSG dataset coordinate operation method code 9651)  
 For coordinate transformation ED50 to ED87 (1)

Ordinate 1 of evaluation point:  $X_0 = \varphi_0 = 55^{\circ}00'00.000''\text{N} = +55 \text{ degrees}$   
 Ordinate 2 of evaluation point:  $Y_0 = \lambda_0 = 0^{\circ}00'00.000''\text{E} = +0 \text{ degrees}$

Scaling factor for coordinate differences:  $m = 1.0$

Parameters:

$A_0 = -5.56098\text{E-}06$                        $A_1 = -1.55391\text{E-}06$     ...     $A_{14} = -4.01383\text{E-}09$   
 $B_0 = +1.48944\text{E-}05$                        $B_2 = +2.68191\text{E-}05$     ...     $B_{14} = +7.62236\text{E-}09$

Forward calculation for:

Latitude  $\varphi_{\text{ED50}} = X_s = 52^{\circ}30'30''\text{N} = +52.508333333 \text{ degrees}$   
 Longitude  $\lambda_{\text{ED50}} = Y_s = 2^{\circ}\text{E} = +2.0 \text{ degrees}$

$U = m * (X_s - X_0) = m * (\varphi_{\text{ED50}} - \varphi_0) = 1.0 * (52.508333333 - 55.0) = -2.491666667 \text{ degrees}$   
 $V = m * (Y_s - Y_0) = m * (\lambda_{\text{ED50}} - \lambda_0) = 1.0 * (2.0 - 0.0) = 2.0 \text{ degrees}$

$dX = (A_0 + A_1U + \dots + A_{14}V^4) / k_{\text{CD}}$   
 $= [-5.56098\text{E-}06 + (-1.55391\text{E-}06 * -2.491666667) + \dots + (-4.01383\text{E-}09 * 2.0^4)] / 1.0$   
 $= -3.12958\text{E-}06 \text{ degrees}$

$dY = (B_0 + B_1U + \dots + B_{14}V^4) / k_{\text{CD}}$   
 $= [+1.48944\text{E-}05 + (2.68191\text{E-}05 * -2.491666667) + \dots + (7.62236\text{E-}09 * 2.0^4)] / 1.0$   
 $= +9.80126\text{E-}06 \text{ degrees}$

Then: Latitude  $\varphi_{\text{ED87}} = X_T = X_s + dX = 52.508333333 - 3.12958\text{E-}06 \text{ degrees} = 52^{\circ}30'29.9887''\text{N}$   
 Longitude  $\lambda_{\text{ED87}} = Y_T = Y_s + dY = 2.000000000 + 9.80126\text{E-}06 \text{ degrees} = 2^{\circ}00'00.0353''\text{E}$

Reverse calculation for coordinate transformation ED50 to ED87 (1).

The transformation method for the ED50 to ED87 (1) coordinate transformation, 4th-order reversible polynomial, is reversible. The same formulas may be applied for the reverse calculation, but coefficients  $A_0$  through  $A_{14}$  and  $B_0$  through  $B_{14}$  are applied with reversal of their signs. Sign reversal is not applied to the coordinates of the evaluation point or scaling factor for coordinate differences. Thus:

Ordinate 1 of evaluation point:  $X_0 = \varphi_0 = 55^{\circ}00'00.000''\text{N} = +55 \text{ degrees}$   
 Ordinate 2 of evaluation point:  $Y_0 = \lambda_0 = 0^{\circ}00'00.000''\text{E} = +0 \text{ degrees}$   
 Scaling factor for coordinate differences:  $m = 1.0$

$A_0 = +5.56098\text{E-}06$                        $A_1 = +1.55391\text{E-}06$     ...     $A_{14} = +4.01383\text{E-}09$

$$B_0 = -1.48944E-05 \quad B_1 = -2.68191E-05 \quad \dots \quad B_{14} = -7.62236E-09$$

Reverse calculation for:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Latitude } \varphi_{ED87} &= X_S = 52^\circ 30' 29.9887'' \text{N} = +52.5083301944 \text{ degrees} \\ \text{Longitude } \lambda_{ED87} &= Y_S = 2^\circ 00' 00.0353'' \text{E} = +2.0000098055 \text{ degrees} \end{aligned}$$

$$U = 1.0 * (52.5083301944 - 55.0) = -2.4916698056 \text{ degrees}$$

$$V = 1.0 * (2.0000098055 - 0.0) = 2.0000098055 \text{ degrees}$$

$$\begin{aligned} dX &= (A_0 + A_1 U + \dots + A_{14} V^4) / k \\ &= [5.56098E-06 + (1.55391E-06 * -2.491666667) + \dots \\ &\quad \dots + (4.01383E-09 * 2.0000098055^4)] / 1.0 \\ &= +3.12957E-06 \text{ degrees} \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} dY &= (B_0 + B_1 U + \dots + B_{14} V^4) / k \\ &= [-1.48944E-05 + (-2.68191E-05 * -2.491666667) + \dots \\ &\quad \dots + (-7.62236E-09 * 2.0000098055^4)] / 1.0 \\ &= -9.80124E-06 \text{ degrees} \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Then: Latitude } \varphi_{ED50} = X_T = X_S + dX &= 52.5083301944 + 3.12957E-06 \text{ degrees} = 52^\circ 30' 30.000'' \text{N} \\ \text{Longitude } \lambda_{ED50} = Y_T = Y_S + dY &= 2^\circ 00' 00.000'' \text{E} \end{aligned}$$

### 2.3.1.2 Polynomial transformation with complex numbers

The relationship between two projected coordinate reference systems may be approximated more elegantly by a single polynomial regression formula written in terms of complex numbers. The advantage is that the dependence between the ‘A’ and ‘B’ coefficients (for U and V) is taken into account in the formula, resulting in fewer coefficients for the same order polynomial. A polynomial to degree 3 in complex numbers is used in Belgium. A polynomial to degree 4 in complex numbers is used in The Netherlands for transforming coordinates referenced to the Amersfoort / RD system to and from ED50 / UTM.

$$\begin{aligned} m_T (dX + i dY) &= (A_1 + i A_2) (U + i V) + (A_3 + i A_4) (U + i V)^2 \quad (\text{to degree 2}) \\ &\quad + (A_5 + i A_6) (U + i V)^3 \quad (\text{additional degree 3 terms}) \\ &\quad + (A_7 + i A_8) (U + i V)^4 \quad (\text{additional degree 4 terms}) \end{aligned}$$

$$\text{where } U = m_S (X_S - X_{S0})$$

$$V = m_S (Y_S - Y_{S0})$$

and  $m_S, m_T$  are the scaling factors for the coordinate differences in the source and target coordinate reference systems.

The polynomial to degree 4 can alternatively be expressed in matrix form as

$$\begin{pmatrix} m_T \cdot dX \\ m_T \cdot dY \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} +A_1 & -A_2 & +A_3 & -A_4 & +A_5 & -A_6 & +A_7 & -A_8 \\ +A_2 & +A_1 & +A_4 & +A_3 & +A_6 & +A_5 & +A_8 & +A_7 \end{pmatrix} * \begin{pmatrix} U \\ V \\ U^2 - V^2 \\ 2UV \\ U^3 - 3UV^2 \\ 3U^2V - V^3 \\ U^4 - 6U^2V^2 + V^4 \\ 4U^3V - 4UV^3 \end{pmatrix}$$

Then as for the general polynomial case above

$$X_T = X_S - X_{SO} + X_{TO} + dX$$

$$Y_T = Y_S - Y_{SO} + Y_{TO} + dY$$

where, as above,

- $X_T, Y_T$  are coordinates in the target coordinate system,
- $X_S, Y_S$  are coordinates in the source coordinate system,
- $X_{SO}, Y_{SO}$  are coordinates of the evaluation point in the source coordinate reference system,
- $X_{TO}, Y_{TO}$  are coordinates of the evaluation point in the target coordinate reference system.

Note that the zero order coefficients of the general polynomial,  $A_0$  and  $B_0$ , have apparently disappeared. In reality they are absorbed by the different coordinates of the source and of the target evaluation point, which in this case, are numerically very different because of the use of two different projected coordinate systems for source and target.

The transformation parameter values (the coefficients) are not reversible. For the reverse transformation a different set of parameter values are required, used within the same formulas as the forward direction.

**Example:** Complex polynomial of degree 4 (EPSG dataset coordinate operation method code 9653)  
Coordinate transformation: Amersfoort / RD New to ED50 / UTM zone 31N (1):

<u>Coordinate transformation parameter name</u>	<u>Formula symbol</u>	<u>Parameter value</u>	<u>Unit</u>
ordinate 1 of the evaluation point in the source CS	$X_{SO}$	155,000.000	metre
ordinate 2 of the evaluation point in the source CS	$Y_{SO}$	463,000.000	metre
ordinate 1 of the evaluation point in the target CS	$X_{TO}$	663,395.607	metre
ordinate 2 of the evaluation point in the target CS	$Y_{TO}$	5,781,194.380	metre
scaling factor for source CRS coordinate differences	$m_S$	$10^{-5}$	
scaling factor for target CRS coordinate differences	$m_T$	1.0	
A1	$A_1$	-51.681	coefficient
A2	$A_2$	+3,290.525	coefficient
A3	$A_3$	+20.172	coefficient
A4	$A_4$	+1.133	coefficient
A5	$A_5$	+2.075	coefficient
A6	$A_6$	+0.251	coefficient
A7	$A_7$	+0.075	coefficient
A8	$A_8$	-0.012	coefficient

For input point:

$$\text{Easting, } X_{\text{AMERSFOORT/RD}} = X_S = 200,000.00 \text{ metres}$$

$$\text{Northing, } Y_{\text{AMERSFOORT/RD}} = Y_S = 500,000.00 \text{ metres}$$

$$U = m_S (X_S - X_{SO}) = (200,000 - 155,000) 10^{-5} = 0.45$$

$$V = m_S (Y_S - Y_{SO}) = (500,000 - 463,000) 10^{-5} = 0.37$$

$$dX = (-1,240.050) / 1.0$$

$$dY = (1,468.748) / 1.0$$

Then: Easting,  $E_{\text{ED50/UTM31}} = X_T = X_S - X_{SO} + X_{TO} + dX$

$$= 200,000 - 155,000 + 663,395.607 + (-1,240.050)$$

$$= 707,155.557 \text{ metres}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Northing, } N_{\text{ED50/UTM31N}} = Y_T &= Y_S - Y_{S0} + Y_{T0} + dY \\ &= 500,000 - 463,000 + 5,781,194.380 + 1,468.748 \\ &= 5,819,663.128 \text{ metres} \end{aligned}$$

**2.3.1.3 Polynomial transformation for Spain**  
 (EPSG dataset coordinate operation method code 9617)

The original geographic coordinate reference system for the Spanish mainland was based on Madrid 1870 datum, Struve 1860 ellipsoid, with longitudes related to the Madrid meridian. Three second-order polynomial expressions have been empirically derived by El Servicio Geográfico del Ejército to transform geographic coordinates based on this system to equivalent values based on the European Datum of 1950 (ED50). The polynomial coefficients derived can be used to transform coordinates from the Madrid 1870 (Madrid) geographic coordinate reference system to the ED50 system. Three pairs of expressions have been derived: each pair is used to calculate the shift in latitude and longitude respectively for (i) a mean for all Spain, (ii) a better fit for the north of Spain, (iii) a better fit for the south of Spain.

The polynomial expressions are:

$$\begin{aligned} d\varphi \text{ (arc sec)} &= A_0 + (A_1 * \varphi_s) + (A_2 * \lambda_s) + (A_3 * H_s) \\ d\lambda \text{ (arc sec)} &= B_0 + B_0 + (B_1 * \varphi_s) + (B_2 * \lambda_s) + (B_3 * H_s) \end{aligned}$$

where latitude  $\varphi_s$  and longitude  $\lambda_s$  are in decimal degrees referred to the Madrid 1870 (Madrid) geographic coordinate reference system and  $H_s$  is gravity-related height in metres.  $B_{00}$  is the longitude (in seconds) of the Madrid meridian measured from the Greenwich meridian; it is the value to be applied to a longitude relative to the Madrid meridian to transform it to a longitude relative to the Greenwich meridian.

The results of these expressions are applied through the formulas:

$$\begin{aligned} \varphi_{\text{ED50}} &= \varphi_{\text{M1870(M)}} + d\varphi \\ \text{and } \lambda_{\text{ED50}} &= \lambda_{\text{M1870(M)}} + d\lambda. \end{aligned}$$

**Example:**

Input point coordinate reference system: Madrid 1870 (Madrid) (geographic 2D)

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Latitude } \varphi_s &= 42^\circ 38' 52.77'' \text{N} \\ &= +42.647992 \text{ degrees} \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Longitude } \lambda_s &= 3^\circ 39' 34.57'' \text{E of Madrid} \\ &= +3.659603 \text{ degrees from the Madrid meridian.} \end{aligned}$$

$$\text{Gravity-related height } H_s = 0 \text{ m}$$

For the north zone transformation:

$$\begin{array}{ll} A_0 = 11.328779 & B_{00} = -13276.58 \\ A_1 = -0.1674 & B_0 = 2.5079425 \\ A_2 = -0.03852 & B_1 = 0.8352 \\ A_3 = 0.0000379 & B_2 = -0.00864 \\ & B_3 = -0.0000038 \end{array}$$

$$d\varphi = +4.05 \text{ seconds}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Then latitude } \varphi_{\text{ED50}} &= 42^\circ 38' 52.77'' \text{N} + 4.05'' \\ &= 42^\circ 38' 56.82'' \text{N} \end{aligned}$$

$$d\lambda = -13238.484 \text{ seconds} = -3^\circ 40' 38.484''$$

$$\text{Then longitude } \lambda_{\text{ED50}} = 3^\circ 39' 34.57'' \text{E} - 3^\circ 40' 38.484''$$

= 0°01'03.914"W of Greenwich.

### 2.3.2 Miscellaneous Linear Coordinate Operations

An affine 2D transformation is used for converting or transforming a coordinate reference system possibly with non-orthogonal axes and possibly different units along the two axes to an isometric coordinate reference system (i.e. a system of which the axes are orthogonal and have equal scale units, for example a projected CRS). The transformation therefore involves a change of origin, differential change of axis orientation and a differential scale change. The EPSG dataset distinguishes four methods to implement this class of coordinate operation:

- 1) the parametric representation,
- 2) the geometric representation,
- 3) a simplified case of the geometric representation known as the Similarity Transformation in which the degrees of freedom are constrained.
- 4) a variation of the geometric representation for seismic bin grids.

#### 2.3.2.1 Affine Parametric Transformation

(EPSG dataset coordinate operation method code 9624)

Mathematical and survey literature usually provides the parametric representation of the affine transformation. The parametric algorithm is commonly used for rectification of digitised maps. It is often embedded in CAD software and Geographic Information Systems where it is frequently referred to as “rubber sheeting”.

The formula in matrix form is as follows:

$$V_T = V_{TO} + R * V_S$$

where:

$$V_T = \begin{pmatrix} X_T \\ Y_T \end{pmatrix} \quad V_{TO} = \begin{pmatrix} A_0 \\ B_0 \end{pmatrix} \quad R = \begin{pmatrix} A_1 & A_2 \\ B_1 & B_2 \end{pmatrix} \quad \text{and} \quad V_S = \begin{pmatrix} X_S \\ Y_S \end{pmatrix}$$

or using algebraic coefficients:

$$X_T = A_0 + A_1 * X_S + A_2 * Y_S$$

$$Y_T = B_0 + B_1 * X_S + B_2 * Y_S$$

where

$X_T, Y_T$  are the coordinates of a point P in the target coordinate reference system;

$X_S, Y_S$  are the coordinates of P in the source coordinate reference system.

This form of describing an affine transformation is analogous to the general polynomial transformation formulas (section 3.1 above). Although it is somewhat artificial, an affine transformation could be considered to be a first order general polynomial transformation but without the reduction to source and target evaluation points.

#### Reversibility

The reverse operation is another affine parametric transformation using the same formulas but with different parameter values. The reverse parameter values, indicated by a prime ('), can be calculated from those of the forward operation as follows:

$$\begin{aligned}
 D &= A_1 * B_2 - A_2 * B_1 \\
 A_0' &= (A_2 * B_0 - B_2 * A_0) / D \\
 B_0' &= (B_1 * A_0 - A_1 * B_0) / D \\
 A_1' &= +B_2 / D \\
 A_2' &= -A_2 / D \\
 B_1' &= -B_1 / D \\
 B_2' &= +A_1 / D
 \end{aligned}$$

Then

$$\begin{aligned}
 X_S &= A_0' + A_1' * X_T + A_2' * Y_T \\
 Y_S &= B_0' + B_1' * X_T + B_2' * Y_T
 \end{aligned}$$

Or in matrix form:

$$V_S = R^{-1} * (V_T - V_{T0})$$

### 2.3.2.2 Affine General Geometric Transformation

(EPSG dataset coordinate operation method code 9623)

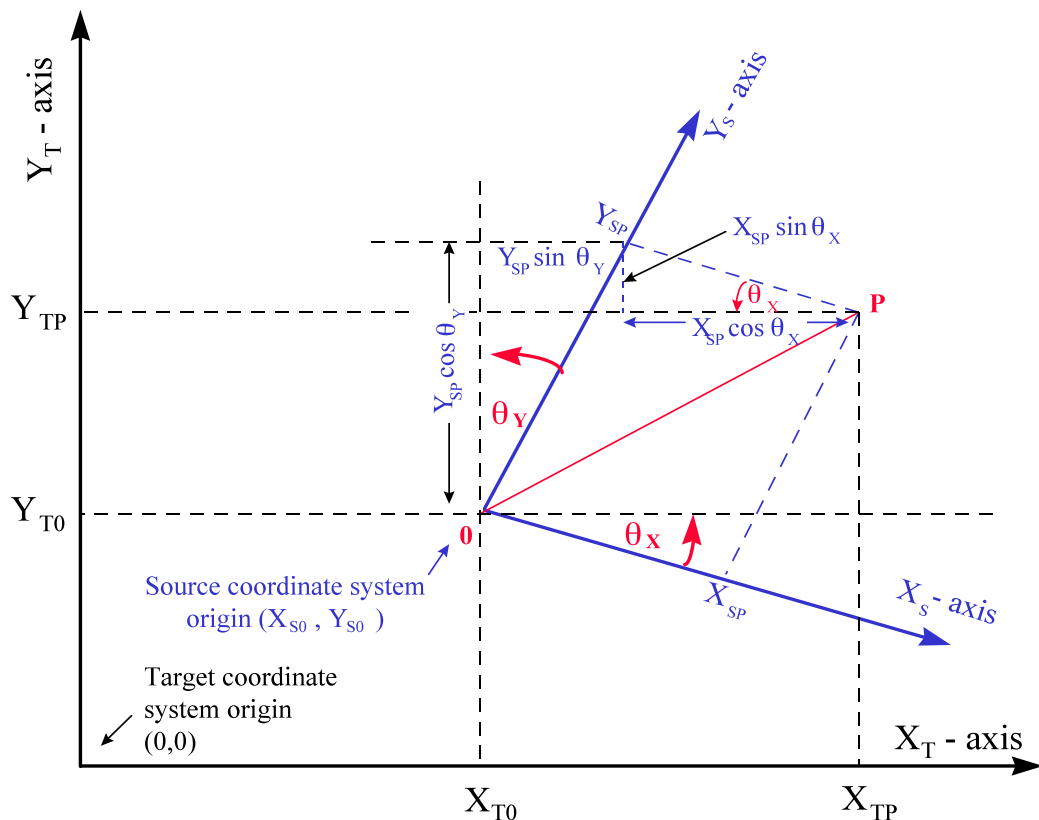


Figure 12. Geometric representation of the affine coordinate transformation  
(Please note that to prevent cluttering of the figure the scale parameters of the X<sub>s</sub> and Y<sub>s</sub> axes have been omitted).

From the diagram above it can be seen that:

$$\begin{aligned}
 X_{TP} &= X_{T0} + Y_{SP} * \sin \theta_Y + X_{SP} * \cos \theta_X = X_{T0} + X_{SP} * \cos \theta_X + Y_{SP} * \sin \theta_Y \\
 Y_{TP} &= Y_{T0} + Y_{SP} * \cos \theta_Y - X_{SP} * \sin \theta_X = Y_{T0} - X_{SP} * \sin \theta_X + Y_{SP} * \cos \theta_Y
 \end{aligned}$$

The scaling of both source and target coordinate reference systems adds some complexity to this formula. The operation will often be applied to transform an engineering coordinate reference system to a projected

coordinate reference system. The orthogonal axes of the projected coordinate reference system have identical same units. The engineering coordinate reference system may have different units of measure on its two axes: these have scale ratios of  $M_X$  and  $M_Y$  respective to the axes of the projected coordinate reference system.

The projected coordinate reference system is nominally defined to be in well-known units, e.g. metres. However, the distortion characteristics of the map projection only preserve true scale along certain defined lines or curves, hence the projected coordinate reference system's unit of measure is strictly speaking only valid along those lines or curves. Everywhere else its scale is distorted by the map projection. For conformal map projections the distortion at any point can be expressed by the point scale factor 'k' for that point. Please note that this point scale factor 'k' should NOT be confused with the scale factor at the natural origin of the projection, denominated by 'k<sub>0</sub>'. (For non-conformal map projections the scale distortion at a point is bearing-dependent and will not be described in this document).

It has developed as working practice to choose the origin of the source (engineering) coordinate reference system as the point in which to calculate this point scale factor 'k', although for engineering coordinate reference systems with a large coverage area a point in the middle of the area may be a better choice.

Adding the scaling between each pair of axes and dropping the suffix for point P, after rearranging the terms we have the geometric representation of the affine transformation:

$$\begin{aligned} X_T &= X_{TO} + X_S * k * M_X * \cos \theta_X + Y_S * k * M_Y * \sin \theta_Y \\ Y_T &= Y_{TO} - X_S * k * M_X * \sin \theta_X + Y_S * k * M_Y * \cos \theta_Y \end{aligned}$$

where:

- $X_{TO}, Y_{TO}$  = the coordinates of the origin point of the source coordinate reference system, expressed in the target coordinate reference system;
- $M_X, M_Y$  = the length of one unit of the source axis, expressed in units of the target axis, for the first and second source and target axes pairs respectively;
- k = point scale factor of the target coordinate reference system at a chosen reference point;
- $\theta_X, \theta_Y$  = the angles about which the source coordinate reference system axes  $X_S$  and  $Y_S$  must be rotated to coincide with the target coordinate reference system axes  $X_T$  and  $Y_T$  respectively (counter-clockwise being positive).

Alternatively, in matrix form:

$$\mathbf{V}_T = \mathbf{V}_{TO} + \mathbf{R}_I * k * \mathbf{S}_I * \mathbf{V}_S$$

where:

$$\mathbf{V}_T = \begin{pmatrix} X_T \\ Y_T \end{pmatrix} \quad \mathbf{V}_{TO} = \begin{pmatrix} X_{TO} \\ Y_{TO} \end{pmatrix} \quad \mathbf{V}_S = \begin{pmatrix} X_S \\ Y_S \end{pmatrix}$$

and

$$\mathbf{R}_I = \begin{pmatrix} \cos \theta_X & \sin \theta_Y \\ -\sin \theta_X & \cos \theta_Y \end{pmatrix} \quad \mathbf{S}_I = \begin{pmatrix} M_X & 0 \\ 0 & M_Y \end{pmatrix}$$

or

$$\begin{pmatrix} X_T \\ Y_T \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} X_{TO} \\ Y_{TO} \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} \cos \theta_X & \sin \theta_Y \\ -\sin \theta_X & \cos \theta_Y \end{pmatrix} * k * \begin{pmatrix} M_X & 0 \\ 0 & M_Y \end{pmatrix} * \begin{pmatrix} X_S \\ Y_S \end{pmatrix}$$

Comparing the algebraic representation with the parameters of the parametric form in section 2.3.2.1 above it can be seen that the parametric and geometric forms of the affine coordinate transformation are



related as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} A_0 &= X_{TO} \\ A_1 &= k * M_X * \cos \theta_X \\ A_2 &= k * M_Y * \sin \theta_Y \\ B_0 &= Y_{TO} \\ B_1 &= -k * M_X * \sin \theta_X \\ B_2 &= k * M_Y * \cos \theta_Y \end{aligned}$$

### Reversibility

For the Affine Geometric Transformation, the reverse operation can be described by a different formula, as shown below, in which the same parameter values as the forward transformation may be used. In matrix form:

$$V_S = (1/k) * S_I^{-1} * R_I^{-1} * (V_T - V_{TO})$$

or

$$\begin{pmatrix} X_S \\ Y_S \end{pmatrix} = \frac{1}{k.Z} * \begin{pmatrix} 1/M_X & 0 \\ 0 & 1/M_Y \end{pmatrix} * \begin{pmatrix} \cos \theta_Y & -\sin \theta_Y \\ \sin \theta_X & \cos \theta_X \end{pmatrix} * \begin{pmatrix} X_T - X_{TO} \\ Y_T - Y_{TO} \end{pmatrix}$$

where  $Z = \cos(\theta_X - \theta_Y)$ ;

Algebraically:

$$X_S = [(X_T - X_{TO}) * \cos \theta_Y - (Y_T - Y_{TO}) * \sin \theta_Y] / [k * M_X * \cos(\theta_X - \theta_Y)]$$

$$Y_S = [(X_T - X_{TO}) * \sin \theta_X + (Y_T - Y_{TO}) * \cos \theta_X] / [k * M_Y * \cos(\theta_X - \theta_Y)]$$

### Orthogonal case

If the source coordinate reference system happens to have orthogonal axes, that is both axes are rotated through the same angle to bring them into the direction of the orthogonal target coordinate reference system axes, i.e.  $\theta_X = \theta_Y = \theta$ , then the Affine Geometric Transformation can be simplified. In matrix form this is:

$$V_T = V_{TO} + R_2 * k * S_I * V_S$$

where  $V_T$ ,  $V_{TO}$ ,  $S_I$  and  $V_S$  are as in the general case but

$$R_2 = \begin{pmatrix} \cos \theta & \sin \theta \\ -\sin \theta & \cos \theta \end{pmatrix}$$

Alternatively,

$$\begin{pmatrix} X_T \\ Y_T \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} X_{TO} \\ Y_{TO} \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} \cos \theta & \sin \theta \\ -\sin \theta & \cos \theta \end{pmatrix} * k * \begin{pmatrix} M_X & 0 \\ 0 & M_Y \end{pmatrix} * \begin{pmatrix} X_S \\ Y_S \end{pmatrix}$$

Algebraically:

$$X_T = X_{TO} + X_S * k * M_X * \cos \theta + Y_S * k * M_Y * \sin \theta$$

$$Y_T = Y_{TO} - X_S * k * M_X * \sin \theta + Y_S * k * M_Y * \cos \theta$$

where:

$X_{TO}, Y_{TO}$  = the coordinates of the origin point of the source coordinate reference system, expressed in the target coordinate reference system;

- $M_X, M_Y$  = the length of one unit of the source axis, expressed in units of the target axis, for the X axes and the Y axes respectively;
- $k$  = the point scale factor of the target coordinate reference system at a chosen reference point;
- $\theta$  = the angle through which the source coordinate reference system axes must be rotated to coincide with the target coordinate reference system axes (counter-clockwise is positive). Alternatively, the bearing (clockwise positive) of the source coordinate reference system  $Y_S$ -axis measured relative to target coordinate reference system north.

The reverse formulas of the general case can also be simplified by replacing  $\theta_X$  and  $\theta_Y$  with  $\theta$ . In matrix form:

$$V_S = (1/k) * S_1^{-1} * R_2^{-1} * (V_T - V_{TO})$$

or

$$\begin{pmatrix} X_S \\ Y_S \end{pmatrix} = \frac{1}{k} * \begin{pmatrix} 1/M_X & 0 \\ 0 & 1/M_Y \end{pmatrix} * \begin{pmatrix} \cos \theta & -\sin \theta \\ \sin \theta & \cos \theta \end{pmatrix} * \begin{pmatrix} X_T - X_{TO} \\ Y_T - Y_{TO} \end{pmatrix}$$

Algebraically:

$$X_S = [(X_T - X_{TO}) * \cos \theta - (Y_T - Y_{TO}) * \sin \theta] / [k * M_X]$$

$$Y_S = [(X_T - X_{TO}) * \sin \theta + (Y_T - Y_{TO}) * \cos \theta] / [k * M_Y]$$

In the EPSG dataset this orthogonal case has been deprecated. The formulas for the general case should be used, inserting  $\theta$  for both  $\theta_X$  and  $\theta_Y$ . The case has been documented as part of the progression through increasing constraints on the degrees of freedom between the general case and the Similarity Transformation.

### **2.3.2.3 Similarity Transformation**

(EPSG dataset coordinate operation method code 9621)

If the source coordinate reference system has orthogonal axes and also happens to have axes of the same scale, that is both axes are scaled by the same factor to bring them into the scale of the target coordinate reference system axes (i.e.  $M_X = M_Y = M$ ), then the orthogonal case of the Affine Geometric Transformation can be simplified further to a Similarity Transformation.

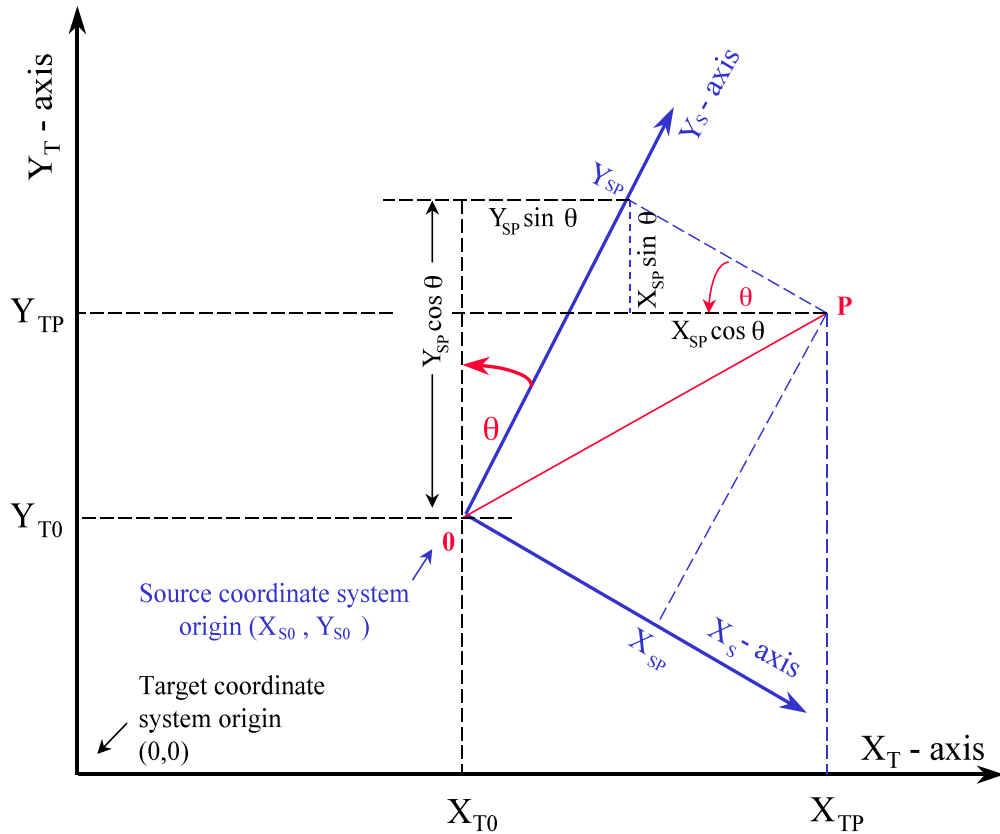


Figure 13. Similarity Transformation

From the above diagram the Similarity Transformation in algebraic form is:

$$X_{TP} = X_{T0} + Y_{SP} * M * \sin \theta + X_{SP} * M * \cos \theta$$

$$Y_{TP} = Y_{T0} + Y_{SP} * M * \cos \theta - X_{SP} * M * \sin \theta$$

Dropping the suffix for point P and rearranging the terms

$$X_T = X_{T0} + X_S * M * \cos \theta + Y_S * M * \sin \theta$$

$$Y_T = Y_{T0} - X_S * M * \sin \theta + Y_S * M * \cos \theta$$

where:

- $X_{T0}, Y_{T0}$  = the coordinates of the origin point of the source coordinate reference system expressed in the target coordinate reference system;
- $M$  = the length of one unit in the source coordinate reference system expressed in units of the target coordinate reference system;
- $\theta$  = the angle about which the axes of the source coordinate reference system need to be rotated to coincide with the axes of the target coordinate reference system, counter-clockwise being positive. Alternatively, the bearing of the source coordinate reference system  $Y_S$ -axis measured relative to target coordinate reference system north.

The Similarity Transformation can also be described as a special case of the Affine Parametric Transformation where coefficients  $A_1 = B_2$  and  $A_2 = -B_1$ .

In matrix form:

$$V_T = V_{T0} + M * R_2 * V_S$$

where  $V_T$ ,  $V_{TO}$ ,  $R_2$  and  $V_S$  are as in the Affine Orthogonal Geometric Transformation method, or

$$\begin{pmatrix} X_T \\ Y_T \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} X_{TO} \\ Y_{TO} \end{pmatrix} + M * \begin{pmatrix} \cos \theta & \sin \theta \\ -\sin \theta & \cos \theta \end{pmatrix} * \begin{pmatrix} X_S \\ Y_S \end{pmatrix}$$

### Reversibility

The reverse formula for the Similarity Transformation, in matrix form, is:

$$V_S = (1/M) * R_2^{-1} * (V_T - V_{TO})$$

or

$$\begin{pmatrix} X_S \\ Y_S \end{pmatrix} = \frac{1}{M} * \begin{pmatrix} \cos \theta & -\sin \theta \\ \sin \theta & \cos \theta \end{pmatrix} * \begin{pmatrix} X_T - X_{TO} \\ Y_T - Y_{TO} \end{pmatrix}$$

Algebraically:

$$X_S = [(X_T - X_{TO}) * \cos \theta - (Y_T - Y_{TO}) * \sin \theta] / [M]$$

$$Y_S = [(X_T - X_{TO}) * \sin \theta + (Y_T - Y_{TO}) * \cos \theta] / [M]$$

### **Example**

Tombak LNG Plant Grid to Nakhl-e Ghanem / UTM zone 39N

Parameters of the Similarity Transformation:

$$X_{TO} = 611267.2865 \text{ metres}$$

$$Y_{TO} = 3046565.8255 \text{ metres}$$

$$M = 0.9997728332$$

$$\theta = 315 \text{ degrees}$$

Forward computation for plant grid coordinates  $x (= X_S) = 20000\text{m}$ ,  $y (= Y_S) = 10000\text{m}$ :

$$\begin{aligned} X_T = \text{UTM E} &= 611267.2865 + 14138.9230 + (-7069.4615) \\ &= 618336.748 \text{ m} \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} Y_T = \text{UTM N} &= 3046565.8255 - (-14138.9230) + 7069.4615 \\ &= 3067774.210 \text{ m} \end{aligned}$$

Reverse computation for UTM coordinates 618336.748 m E, 3067774.210 m:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Plant } x &= [4998.8642 - (-14996.5925)] / 0.9997728332 \\ &= 20000.000 \text{ m} \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Plant } y &= [(-4998.8642) + 14996.5925] / 0.9997728332 \\ &= 10000.000 \text{ m} \end{aligned}$$

#### When to use the Similarity Transformation

Similarity Transformations can be used when source and target coordinate reference systems

- each have orthogonal axes,
- each have the same scale along both axes,

and

- both have the same units of measure,

for example between engineering plant grids and projected coordinate reference systems.

Coordinate Operations between two coordinate reference systems where in either system either the scale along the axes differ or the axes are not orthogonal should be defined as an Affine Transformation in either the parametric or geometric form. But for seismic bin grids see the following section.

#### **2.3.2.4 UKOOA P6 Seismic Bin Grid Transformation**

(EPSG dataset coordinate operation method code 9666)

The UKOOA P6/98 exchange format describes a special case of the Affine Geometric Transformation in which

- the source coordinate reference system is a grid;
- its axes are orthogonal;

and one or both of the following may apply:

- the origin of the bin grid (source coordinate reference system) may be assigned non-zero bin grid coordinates;
- the bin grid (source coordinate reference system) units may increase in increments other than 1, i.e.  $Inc_{SX}$  and  $Inc_{SY}$

The method is also described in the SEG-Y revision 1 seismic data exchange format.



The defining parameters are:

**UKOOA P6 term**

- Bin grid origin (Io)
- Bin grid origin (Jo)
- Map grid easting of bin grid origin (Eo)
- Map grid northing of bin grid origin (No)
- Scale factor of bin grid (SF)
- Nominal bin width along I axis (I\_bin\_width)
- Nominal bin width along J axis (J\_bin\_width)
- Grid bearing of bin grid J axis ( $\theta$ )
- Bin node increment on I axis (I\_bin\_inc)
- Bin node increment on J axis (J\_bin\_inc)

**Equivalent EPSG dataset term**

- Ordinate 1 of evaluation point in source CRS ( $X_{SO}$ )
- Ordinate 2 of evaluation point in source CRS ( $Y_{SO}$ )
- Ordinate 1 of evaluation point in target CRS ( $X_{TO}$ )
- Ordinate 2 of evaluation point in target CRS ( $Y_{TO}$ )
- Point scale factor (k)
- Scale factor for source coordinate reference system first axis ( $M_X$ )
- Scale factor for source coordinate reference system second axis ( $M_Y$ )
- Rotation angle of source coordinate reference system axes ( $\theta$ )
- Bin node increment on I-axis
- Bin node increment on J-axis

In the orthogonal case of the Affine Geometric Transformation formulas, the terms  $X_S$ ,  $Y_S$ ,  $M_X$  and  $M_Y$  are replaced by  $(X_S - X_{SO})$ ,  $(Y_S - Y_{SO})$ ,  $(M_X / Inc_{SX})$  and  $(M_Y / Inc_{SY})$  respectively. Thus the forward transformation from bin grid to map grid (source to target coordinate reference system) is:

$$V_T = V_{TO} + R_2 * k * S_2 * V_2$$

where, as in the orthogonal case of the Affine Geometric Transformation method:

$$V_T = \begin{pmatrix} X_T \\ Y_T \end{pmatrix} \quad V_{TO} = \begin{pmatrix} X_{TO} \\ Y_{TO} \end{pmatrix} \quad \text{and} \quad R_2 = \begin{pmatrix} \cos \theta & \sin \theta \\ -\sin \theta & \cos \theta \end{pmatrix}$$

but where

$$\mathbf{S}_2 = \begin{pmatrix} M_X / \text{Inc}_{SX} & 0 \\ 0 & M_Y / \text{Inc}_{SY} \end{pmatrix} \quad \text{and} \quad \mathbf{V}_2 = \begin{pmatrix} X_S - X_{SO} \\ Y_S - Y_{SO} \end{pmatrix}$$

That is,

$$\begin{pmatrix} X_T \\ Y_T \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} X_{TO} \\ Y_{TO} \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} \cos \theta & \sin \theta \\ -\sin \theta & \cos \theta \end{pmatrix} * k * \begin{pmatrix} M_X / \text{Inc}_{SX} & 0 \\ 0 & M_Y / \text{Inc}_{SY} \end{pmatrix} * \begin{pmatrix} X_S - X_{SO} \\ Y_S - Y_{SO} \end{pmatrix}$$

Algebraically:

$$X_T = X_{TO} + [(X_S - X_{SO}) * \cos \theta * k * M_X / \text{Inc}_{SX}] + [(Y_S - Y_{SO}) * \sin \theta * k * M_Y / \text{Inc}_{SY}]$$

$$Y_T = Y_{TO} - [(X_S - X_{SO}) * \sin \theta * k * M_X / \text{Inc}_{SX}] + [(Y_S - Y_{SO}) * \cos \theta * k * M_Y / \text{Inc}_{SY}]$$

Using the symbol notation in the UKOOA P6/98 document these expressions are:

$$\begin{pmatrix} E \\ N \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} E_O \\ N_O \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} \cos \theta & \sin \theta \\ -\sin \theta & \cos \theta \end{pmatrix} * \text{SF} * \begin{pmatrix} I\_bin\_width & 0 \\ 0 & J\_bin\_width / J\_bin\_inc \end{pmatrix} * \begin{pmatrix} I - I_O \\ J - J_O \end{pmatrix}$$

and

$$E = E_O + [(I - I_O) * \cos \theta * \text{SF} * I\_bin\_width / I\_bin\_inc] + [(J - J_O) * \sin \theta * \text{SF} * J\_bin\_width / J\_bin\_inc]$$

$$N = N_O - [(I - I_O) * \sin \theta * \text{SF} * I\_bin\_width / I\_bin\_inc] + [(J - J_O) * \cos \theta * \text{SF} * J\_bin\_width / J\_bin\_inc]$$

For the reverse transformation (map grid to bin grid):

$$\mathbf{V}_S = (1/k) * \mathbf{S}_2^{-1} * \mathbf{R}_2^{-1} * (\mathbf{V}_T - \mathbf{V}_{TO}) + \mathbf{V}_{SO}$$

or

$$\begin{pmatrix} X_S \\ Y_S \end{pmatrix} = 1/k * \begin{pmatrix} \text{Inc}_{SX} / M_X & 0 \\ 0 & \text{Inc}_{SY} / M_Y \end{pmatrix} * \begin{pmatrix} \cos \theta & -\sin \theta \\ \sin \theta & \cos \theta \end{pmatrix} * \begin{pmatrix} X_T - X_{TO} \\ Y_T - Y_{TO} \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} X_{SO} \\ Y_{SO} \end{pmatrix}$$

or algebraically:

$$X_S = \{[(X_T - X_{TO}) * \cos \theta - (Y_T - Y_{TO}) * \sin \theta] * [\text{Inc}_{SX} / (k * M_X)]\} + X_{SO}$$

$$Y_S = \{[(X_T - X_{TO}) * \sin \theta + (Y_T - Y_{TO}) * \cos \theta] * [\text{Inc}_{SY} / (k * M_Y)]\} + Y_{SO}$$

Using the symbol notation in the UKOOA P6/98 document these reverse expressions are:

$$\begin{pmatrix} I \\ J \end{pmatrix} = 1/\text{SF} * \begin{pmatrix} I\_bin\_inc / I\_bin\_width & 0 \\ 0 & J\_bin\_inc / I\_bin\_width \end{pmatrix} * \begin{pmatrix} \cos \theta & -\sin \theta \\ \sin \theta & \cos \theta \end{pmatrix} * \begin{pmatrix} E - E_O \\ N - N_O \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} I_O \\ J_O \end{pmatrix}$$

and

$$I = \{[(E - E_O) * \cos \theta - (N - N_O) * \sin \theta] * [I\_bin\_inc / (SF * I\_bin\_width)]\} + I_O$$

$$J = \{[(E - E_O) * \sin \theta + (N - N_O) * \cos \theta] * [J\_bin\_inc / (SF * J\_bin\_width)]\} + J_O$$

**Example:**

This example is given in the UKOOA P6/98 document. Source coordinate reference system: imaginary 3D seismic acquisition bin grid. The two axes are orthogonal, but the bin width on the I-axis ( $X_S$  axis) is 25 metres, whilst the bin width on the J-axis ( $Y_S$  axis) is 12.5 metres. The origin of the grid has bin values of 1,1.

The target coordinate reference system is a projected CRS (WGS 84 / UTM Zone 31N) upon which the origin of the bin grid is defined at  $E = 456781.0$ ,  $N = 5836723.0$ . The projected coordinate reference system point scale factor at the bin grid origin is 0.99984.

In the map grid (target CRS), the bearing of the bin grid (source CRS) I and J axes are  $110^\circ$  and  $20^\circ$  respectively. Thus the angle through which the bin grid axes need to be rotated to coincide with the map grid axes is  $+20$  degrees.

The transformation parameter values are:

<u>Parameter</u>	<u>EPSG symbol</u>	<u>P6 symbol</u>	<u>Parameter value</u>
Bin grid origin I	$X_{SO}$	$I_o$	1
Bin grid origin J	$Y_{SO}$	$J_o$	1
Bin grid origin Easting	$X_{TO}$	$E_o$	456781.00 m
Bin grid origin Northing	$Y_{TO}$	$N_o$	5836723.00 m
Scale factor of bin grid	$k$	SF	0.99984
Bin Width on I-axis	$M_X$	$I\_bin\_width$	25 m
Bin Width on J-axis	$M_Y$	$J\_bin\_width$	12.5 m
Map grid bearing of bin grid J-axis	$\theta$	$\theta$	20 deg
Bin node increment on I-axis	$Inc_{SX}$	$I\_bin\_inc$	1
Bin node increment on J-axis	$Inc_{SY}$	$J\_bin\_inc$	1

Forward calculation for centre of bin with coordinates:  $I = 300$ ,  $J = 247$ :

$$\begin{aligned} X_T = \text{Easting} &= X_{TO} + [(X_S - X_{SO}) * \cos \theta * k * M_X / Inc_{SX}] + [(Y_S - Y_{SO}) * \sin \theta * k * M_Y / Inc_{SY}] \\ &= 456781.000 + 7023.078 + 1051.544 \\ &= 464855.62 \text{ m.} \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} Y_T = \text{Northing} &= Y_{TO} - [(X_S - X_{SO}) * \sin \theta * k * M_X / Inc_{SX}] + [(Y_S - Y_{SO}) * \cos \theta * k * M_Y / Inc_{SY}] \\ &= 5836723.000 - 2556.192 + 2889.092 \\ &= 5837055.90 \text{ m.} \end{aligned}$$

Reverse calculation for this point 464 855.62mE, 5 837 055.90mN:

$$\begin{aligned} X_S &= \{[(X_T - X_{TO}) * \cos \theta - (Y_T - Y_{TO}) * \sin \theta] * [Inc_{SX} / (k * M_X)]\} + X_{SO} \\ &= 300 \text{ bins,} \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} Y_S &= \{[(X_T - X_{TO}) * \sin \theta + (Y_T - Y_{TO}) * \cos \theta] * [Inc_{SY} / (k * M_Y)]\} + Y_{SO} \\ &= 247 \text{ bins} \end{aligned}$$



## **2.4 Coordinate Transformations**

### **2.4.1 Offsets - general**

Several transformation methods which utilise offsets in coordinate values are recognised. The offset methods may be in n-dimensions. These include longitude rotations, geographic coordinate offsets, Cartesian grid offsets and vertical offsets.

Mathematically, if the origin of a one-dimensional coordinate system is shifted along the positive axis and placed at a point with ordinate A, then the transformation formula is:

$$X_{\text{new}} = X_{\text{old}} - A$$

However it is common practice in coordinate system transformations to apply the shift as an addition, with the sign of the shift parameter value having been suitably reversed to compensate for the practice. Since 1999 this practice has been adopted for the EPSG dataset. Hence transformations allow calculation of coordinates in the target system by adding a correction parameter to the coordinate values of the point in the source system:

$$X_t = X_s + A$$

where  $X_s$  and  $X_t$  are the values of the coordinates in the source and target coordinate systems and A is the value of the transformation parameter to transform source coordinate reference system coordinate to target coordinate reference system coordinate.

Offset methods are reversible. For the reverse transformation, the offset parameter value is applied with its sign reversed.

#### **2.4.1.1 Cartesian Grid Offsets from Form Function**

(EPSG dataset coordinate operation method code 1036)

In the German state of Schleswig-Holstein the Cartesian grid offsets to be applied are determined through interpolation within an irregular grid of points at which coordinates in both source and target coordinate reference systems are given. The interpolation uses a finite element method form function procedure described in papers by Joachim Boljen in *Zeitschrift für Vermessungswesen* (ZfV, the Journal of the German Association of Surveying) volume 128 of April 2003 pages 244-250 and volume 129 of April 2004 pages 258-260.

### **2.4.2 Transformations between Vertical Coordinate Reference Systems**

#### **2.4.2.1 Vertical Offset**

(EPSG dataset coordinate operation method code 9616)

As described in 2.4.1, a vertical offset allows calculation of coordinates in the target vertical coordinate reference system by adding a correction parameter A to the coordinate values of the point in the source system:

$$X_2 = X_1 + A_{1>2}$$

where

$X_2$  = value in the forward target vertical coordinate reference system.

$X_1$  = value in the forward source vertical coordinate reference system.

$A_{1>2}$  is the offset to be applied for the transformation from CRS 1 to CRS 2. Its value for the forward calculation is the value of the origin of the source CRS 1 in the target CRS 2.

For the **reverse** transformation from CRS 2 to CRS 1 the same formula is used but with the sign of the offset  $A_{1>2}$  reversed:

$$X_1 = X_2 + (-A_{1>2})$$

#### **Change of axis direction**

The above formulas apply only when the positive direction of the axis of each CRS is the same. If there is a requirement to transform heights in the source CRS to depths in the target CRS or to transform depths in the source CRS to heights in the target CRS, the formulas must be modified to:

$$\text{for the forward transformation: } X_2 = mX_1 + A_{1>2}$$

$$\text{for the reverse transformation: } X_1 = m[X_2 + (-A_{1>2})]$$

where  $m$  is a direction modifier,

$m = +1$  if the transformation involves no change of axis direction, i.e. height to height or depth to depth

$m = -1$  if the transformation involves a change of axis direction, i.e. height to depth or depth to height

These modified formulas remain valid whether or not there is a change in axis direction.

### Change of unit

A further modification allows for source CRS axis, target CRS axis or offset to be in different units giving the general formulas:

$$\text{for the forward transformation: } X_2 = \{m * (X_1 * U_1) + (A_{1>2} * U_A)\} / U_2$$

$$\text{for the reverse transformation: } X_1 = \{m * [(X_2 * U_2) + (-A_{1>2} * U_A)]\} / U_1$$

where  $U_1$ ,  $U_2$  and  $U_A$  are unit conversion ratios for the two systems and the offset value respectively.  $U = [(factor\ b) / (factor\ c)]$  from the EPSG Dataset Unit of Measure table, populated with respect to the linear base unit, metre.  $U$  has a value of 0.3048 for the international foot.

### **Example:**

For coordinate transformation: KOC CD height to KOC WD depth (ft) (1), code 5453:

$$\text{Transformation Parameter: Vertical Offset } A_{1>2} = 15.55 \text{ ft}$$

Source CRS axis direction is 'up' and Target CRS axis direction is 'down', hence  $m = -1$

Offset unit = "foot" for which (from UoM table)  $b = 0.3048$  and  $c = 1$ , then  $U_A = b/c = 0.3048$

Source CRS (KOC CD height) coordinate axis unit = "metre",  $b = 1$ ,  $c = 1$ , then  $U_s = 1$

Target CRS (KOC WD depth) coordinate axis unit = "foot",  $b = 0.3048$ ,  $c = 1$ , then  $U_t = 0.3048$

Consider a point having a gravity-related height  $H_{CD}$  in the KOC Construction Datum height system of 2.55 m. Its value in the KOC Well Datum depth (ft) system is

$$D_{WD} = \{-1 * (2.55 * 1) + (15.55 * 0.3048)\} / 0.3048$$

$$= 7.18 \text{ ft}$$

For the reverse calculation to transform the Well Datum depth of 7.18 ft to Construction Datum height:

$$H_{CD} = \{-1 * [(7.18 * 0.3048) + (-15.55 * 0.3048)]\} / 1$$

$$= 2.55 \text{ m}$$

### **2.4.2.2 Vertical Offset by Interpolation of Gridded Data**

The relationship between some gravity-related coordinate reference systems is available through gridded data sets of offsets (sometimes called height differences). The vertical offset at a point is first interpolated within the grid of values.

For the purposes of interpolation, horizontal coordinates of the point are required. However the transformation remains 1-dimensional. Although the providers of some gridded data sets suggest a particular interpolation method within the grid, generally the density of grid nodes should be such that any reasonable grid interpolation method will give the same offset value within an appropriately small tolerance. Bi-linear interpolation is the most usual grid interpolation mechanism. The EPSG dataset differentiates methods by the

format of the gridded data file. The grid file format is given in documentation available from the information source. An example is *Vertcon* (EPSG dataset coordinate operation method code 9658) which is used by the US National Geodetic Survey for transformation between the NGVD29 and NAVD88 gravity-related height systems. Because the difference in NAD27 and NAD83 horizontal coordinate values of a point is insignificant in comparison to the rate of change of height offset, interpolation within the *Vertcon* gridded data file may be made in either NAD27 or NAD83 horizontal systems.

Once the vertical offset value has been derived from the grid it is applied through the formulas given in the previous section.

### 2.4.2.3 Vertical Offset and Slope

(EPSG dataset coordinate operation method code 9657)

In Europe, national vertical systems are related to the pan-European vertical system through three transformation parameters and the formula:

$$X_2 = m * X_1 + \{A_{1>2} + [I_{\lambda>2} * \rho_0 * (\varphi - \varphi_0)] + [I_{\lambda>2} * \nu_0 * (\lambda - \lambda_0) * \cos\varphi]\}$$
 where

$X_2$  = value in the target vertical coordinate reference system.

$X_1$  = value in the source vertical coordinate reference system.

$m$  indicates a direction change of the CRS axis:

$m = +1$  when no direction change takes place (height to height or depth to depth),

$m = -1$  in case of a direction change (height to depth or depth to height).

$A_{1>2}$  is the offset to be applied for the transformation from CRS 1 to CRS 2. Its value is the value of the origin of the source CRS 1 in the target CRS 2.

$I_{\lambda>2}$  is the value in radians of the slope parameter in the latitude domain, i.e. in the plane of the meridian, derived at an evaluation point with coordinates of  $\varphi_0, \lambda_0$ . When  $I_{\lambda}$  is positive then to the north of the evaluation point latitude  $\varphi_0$  the source and target CRS surfaces converge.

$I_{\lambda>2}$  is the value in radians of the slope parameter in the longitude domain, i.e. perpendicular to the plane of the meridian. When  $I_{\lambda}$  is positive then to the east of the evaluation point longitude  $\lambda_0$  the CRS surfaces converge.

$\rho_0$  is the radius of curvature of the meridian at latitude  $\varphi_0$ ,

$$\text{where } \rho_0 = a(1 - e^2)/(1 - e^2 \sin^2 \varphi_0)^{3/2}$$

$\nu_0$  is the radius of curvature on the prime vertical (i.e. perpendicular to the meridian) at latitude  $\varphi_0$ ,

$$\text{where } \nu_0 = a/(1 - e^2 \sin^2 \varphi_0)^{1/2}$$

$\varphi, \lambda$  are the horizontal coordinates of the point in the ETRS89 coordinate reference system, in radians.

$\varphi_0, \lambda_0$  are the coordinates of the evaluation point in the ETRS89 coordinate reference system, in radians.

The horizontal location of the point must always be given in ETRS89 terms. Care is required where compound coordinate reference systems are in use: if the horizontal coordinates of the point are known in the local CRS they must first be transformed to ETRS89 values.

### **Reversibility**

Similarly to the Vertical Offset method described in previous sections above, the Vertical Offset and Slope method is reversible using a slightly different formula to the forward formula and in which the signs of the parameters  $A, I_{\lambda}$  and  $I_{\lambda}$  from the forward transformation are reversed in the reverse transformation:

$$X_1 = m * \{X_2 + -A_{1>2} + [-I_{\lambda>2} * \rho_0 * (\varphi - \varphi_0)] + [-I_{\lambda>2} * \nu_0 * (\lambda - \lambda_0) * \cos\varphi]\}$$

**Example:**

For coordinate transformation LN02 height to EVRF2000 height (1)

Ordinate 1 of evaluation point:	$\varphi_{S0} =$	46°55'N	=	0.818850307 rad
Ordinate 2 of evaluation point:	$\lambda_{S0} =$	8°11'E (of Greenwich)	=	0.142826110 rad
Transformation Parameters:	A =	-0.245 m		
	$I_{\varphi} =$	-0.210"	=	-0.000001018 rad
	$I_{\lambda} =$	-0.032"	=	-0.000000155 rad

Source axis direction is "up", target axis direction is "up", m = +1

Consider a point having a gravity-related height in the LN02 system ( $H_s$ ) of 473.0m and with horizontal coordinates in the ETRS89 geographic coordinate reference system of:

$$\text{Latitude } \varphi_{\text{ETRS89}} = 47^{\circ}20'00.00''\text{N} = 0.826122513 \text{ rad}$$

$$\text{Longitude } \lambda_{\text{ETRS89}} = 9^{\circ}40'00.00''\text{E} = 0.168715161 \text{ rad}$$

ETRS89 uses the GRS1980 ellipsoid for which a = 6378137 m and 1/f = 298.25722221

Then	$\rho_0 =$	6369526.88 m
	$I_{\varphi} \text{ term} =$	-0.047 m
	$\nu_0 =$	6389555.64 m
	$I_{\lambda} \text{ term} =$	-0.017 m

$$\begin{aligned} \text{whence EVRF2000 height } X_2 = H_{\text{EVRF}} &= +1 * 473.0 + (-0.245) + (-0.047) + (-0.017) \\ &= 472.69 \text{ m.} \end{aligned}$$

For the reverse transform from EVRF2000 height of 472.69 m to LN02 height:

$$\begin{aligned} X_1 = H_{\text{LN02}} &= +1 * \{472.69 + [ -(-0.245) ] + [ -(-0.047) ] + [ -(-0.017) ] \} \\ &= 473.00 \text{ m.} \end{aligned}$$

### 2.4.3 Transformations between Geocentric Coordinate Reference Systems

The methods in this section operate in the geocentric coordinate domain. However they are most frequently used as the middle part of a transformation of coordinates from one geographic coordinate reference system into another forming a concatenated operation of:

$$[(\text{geographic to geocentric}) + (\text{geocentric to geocentric}) + (\text{geocentric to geographic})]$$

See section 2.4.4.1 below for a fuller description of these concatenated operations and Guidance Note 7 part 1 for a general discussion of implicit concatenated operations created by application software.

The formulae given in the remainder of this section are for the transformation in the geocentric coordinate domain.

#### 2.4.3.1 Geocentric Translations (geocentric domain)

(EPSG dataset coordinate operation method code 1031)

If we assume that the axes of the ellipsoids are parallel, that the prime meridian is Greenwich, and that there is no scale difference between the source and target coordinate reference system, then geocentric coordinate reference systems may be related to each other through three translations (colloquially known as shifts) **dX**, **dY**, **dZ** in the sense from source geocentric coordinate reference system to target geocentric coordinate reference system. They may then be applied as

$$\begin{aligned} X_t &= X_s + dX \\ Y_t &= Y_s + dY \\ Z_t &= Z_s + dZ \end{aligned}$$

**Example:**

Consider a North Sea point with coordinates derived by GPS satellite in the WGS84 geocentric coordinate reference system, with coordinates of:

$$\begin{aligned} X_s &= 3771\,793.97 \text{ m} \\ Y_s &= 140\,253.34 \text{ m} \\ Z_s &= 5124\,304.35 \text{ m} \end{aligned}$$

whose coordinates are required in terms of the ED50 coordinate reference system which takes the International 1924 ellipsoid. The three parameter geocentric translations method's parameter values from WGS84 to ED50 for this North Sea area are given as dX = +84.87m, dY = +96.49m, dZ = +116.95m.

Applying the quoted geocentric translations to these, we obtain new geocentric values now related to ED50:

$$\begin{aligned} X_t &= 3771\,793.97 + 84.87 = 3771\,878.84 \text{ m} \\ Y_t &= 140\,253.34 + 96.49 = 140\,349.83 \text{ m} \\ Z_t &= 5124\,304.35 + 116.95 = 5124\,421.30 \text{ m} \end{aligned}$$

**2.4.3.2 Helmert 7-parameter transformations**

2.4.3.2.1 Position Vector transformation (geocentric domain)  
 (EPSG dataset coordinate operation method code 1033)

It is rare for the condition assumed in the geocentric translation method above – that the axes of source and target systems are exactly parallel and the two systems have an identical scale – is true. Further parameters to account for rotation and scale differences may be introduced. This is usually described as a simplified 7-parameter Helmert transformation, expressed in matrix form in what is known as the "Bursa-Wolf" formula:

$$\begin{pmatrix} X_T \\ Y_T \\ Z_T \end{pmatrix} = M * \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -R_Z & +R_Y \\ +R_Z & 1 & -R_X \\ -R_Y & +R_X & 1 \end{pmatrix} * \begin{pmatrix} X_S \\ Y_S \\ Z_S \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} dX \\ dY \\ dZ \end{pmatrix}$$

The parameters are commonly referred to defining the transformation "from source coordinate reference system to target coordinate reference system", whereby (X<sub>S</sub>, Y<sub>S</sub>, Z<sub>S</sub>) are the coordinates of the point in the source geocentric coordinate reference system and (X<sub>T</sub>, Y<sub>T</sub>, Z<sub>T</sub>) are the coordinates of the point in the target geocentric coordinate reference system. But that does not define the parameters uniquely; neither is the definition of the parameters implied in the formula, as is often believed. However, the following definition, which is consistent with the "Position Vector Transformation" convention (EPSG dataset coordinate operation method code 9606), is common E&P survey practice, used by the International Association of Geodesy (IAG) and recommended by ISO 19111:

(dX, dY, dZ) :Translation vector, to be added to the point's position vector in the source coordinate reference system in order to transform from source system to target system; also: the coordinates of the origin of the source coordinate reference system in the target coordinate reference system.

(R<sub>X</sub>, R<sub>Y</sub>, R<sub>Z</sub>) :Rotations to be applied to the point's vector. The sign convention is such that a positive rotation about an axis is defined as a clockwise rotation of the position vector when viewed from the origin of the Cartesian coordinate reference system in the positive direction of that axis; e.g. a positive rotation about the Z-axis only from source system to target system will result in a larger longitude value for the point in the target system. Although rotation angles may be quoted in any angular unit of measure, the formula as given here requires the angles to be provided in radians.

**M** : The scale correction to be made to the position vector in the source coordinate reference system in order to obtain the correct scale in the target coordinate reference system.  $M = (1 + dS \cdot 10^{-6})$ , where  $dS$  is the scale correction expressed in parts per million.

**Example:**

Transformation from WGS 72 to WGS 84 (EPSG dataset transformation code 1238). Transformation parameter values:

- dX = 0.000 m
- dY = 0.000 m
- dZ = +4.5 m
- R<sub>X</sub> = 0.000 sec
- R<sub>Y</sub> = 0.000 sec
- R<sub>Z</sub> = +0.554 sec = 0.000002685868 radians
- dS = +0.219 ppm

Input point coordinate system: WGS 72 (Cartesian geocentric coordinates):

- X<sub>S</sub> = 3 657 660.66 m
- Y<sub>S</sub> = 255 768.55 m
- Z<sub>S</sub> = 5 201 382.11 m

Application of the 7 parameter Position Vector Transformation results in:

- X<sub>T</sub> = 3 657 660.78 m
- Y<sub>T</sub> = 255 778.43 m
- Z<sub>T</sub> = 5 201 387.75 m

on the WGS 84 geocentric coordinate reference system.

**Reversibility**

The Helmert 7-parameter transformations is an approximation formula that is valid only when the transformation parameters are small compared to the magnitude of the geocentric coordinates. Under this condition the transformation is considered to be reversible for practical purposes.

**2.4.3.2.2 Coordinate Frame Rotation (geocentric domain)**

(EPSG dataset coordinate operation method code 1032)

Although being common practice particularly in the European E&P industry, the Position Vector Transformation sign convention is not universally accepted. A variation on this formula is also used, particularly in the USA E&P industry. That formula is based on the same definition of translation and scale parameters, but a different definition of the rotation parameters. The associated convention is known as the "Coordinate Frame Rotation" convention.

The formula is:

$$\begin{pmatrix} X_T \\ Y_T \\ Z_T \end{pmatrix} = M * \begin{pmatrix} 1 & +R_Z & -R_Y \\ -R_Z & 1 & +R_X \\ +R_Y & -R_X & 1 \end{pmatrix} * \begin{pmatrix} X_S \\ Y_S \\ Z_S \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} dX \\ dY \\ dZ \end{pmatrix}$$

and the parameters are defined as:

(dX, dY, dZ) : Translation vector, to be added to the point's position vector in the source coordinate reference system in order to transform from source coordinate reference system to target coordinate reference system; also: the coordinates of the origin of source coordinate reference system in the target frame.

(R<sub>X</sub>, R<sub>Y</sub>, R<sub>Z</sub>) : Rotations to be applied to the coordinate reference frame. The sign convention is such that a positive rotation of the frame about an axis is defined as a clockwise rotation of the coordinate reference

frame when viewed from the origin of the Cartesian coordinate reference system in the positive direction of that axis, that is a positive rotation about the Z-axis only from source coordinate reference system to target coordinate reference system will result in a smaller longitude value for the point in the target coordinate reference system. Although rotation angles may be quoted in any angular unit of measure, the formula as given here requires the angles to be provided in radians.

**M** : The scale factor to be applied to the position vector in the source coordinate reference system in order to obtain the correct scale of the target coordinate reference system.  $M = (1+dS*10^{-6})$ , where dS is the scale correction expressed in parts per million.

In the absence of rotations the two formulas are identical; the difference is solely in the rotations. The name of the second method reflects this.

Note that the same rotation that is defined as positive in the Position Vector method is consequently negative in the Coordinate Frame method and vice versa. It is therefore crucial that the convention underlying the definition of the rotation parameters is clearly understood and is communicated when exchanging transformation parameter values, so that the parameter values may be associated with the correct coordinate transformation method (algorithm).

The same example as for the Position Vector Transformation can be calculated, however the following transformation parameters have to be applied to achieve the same input and output in terms of coordinate values:

Transformation parameters Coordinate Frame Rotation convention:

$$\begin{aligned} dX &= 0.000 \text{ m} \\ dY &= 0.000 \text{ m} \\ dZ &= +4.5 \text{ m} \\ R_X &= -0.000 \text{ sec} \\ R_Y &= -0.000 \text{ sec} \\ R_Z &= -0.554 \text{ sec} = -0.000002685868 \text{ radians} \\ dS &= +0.219 \text{ ppm} \end{aligned}$$

Please note that only the rotation has changed sign as compared to the Position Vector Transformation. The Position Vector convention is used by IAG and recommended by ISO 19111.

The comments on reversibility of the Position Vector method apply equally to the Coordinate Frame method.

### **2.4.3.3 Molodensky-Badekas transformation (geocentric domain)**

(EPSG dataset coordinate operation method code 1034)

To eliminate high correlation between the translations and rotations in the derivation of parameter values for the Helmert transformation methods discussed in the previous section, instead of the rotations being derived about the geocentric coordinate reference system origin they may be derived at a location within the points used in the determination. Three additional parameters, the coordinates of the rotation point, are then required, making 10 parameters in total. The formula is:

$$\begin{pmatrix} X_T \\ Y_T \\ Z_T \end{pmatrix} = M * \begin{pmatrix} 1 & +R_Z & -R_Y \\ -R_Z & 1 & +R_X \\ +R_Y & -R_X & 1 \end{pmatrix} * \begin{pmatrix} X_S - X_P \\ Y_S - Y_P \\ Z_S - Z_P \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} X_P \\ Y_P \\ Z_P \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} dX \\ dY \\ dZ \end{pmatrix}$$

and the parameters are defined as:

(dX, dY, dZ) : Translation vector, to be added to the point's position vector in the source coordinate system in order to transform from source coordinate reference system to target coordinate reference system; also: the coordinates of the origin of source coordinate reference system in the target frame.

(R<sub>X</sub>, R<sub>Y</sub>, R<sub>Z</sub>) : Rotations to be applied to the coordinate reference frame. The sign convention is such that a positive rotation of the frame about an axis is defined as a clockwise rotation of the coordinate reference frame when viewed from the origin of the Cartesian coordinate system in the positive direction of that axis, that is a positive rotation about the Z-axis only from source coordinate reference system to target coordinate reference system will result in a smaller longitude value for the point in the target coordinate reference system. Although rotation angles may be quoted in any angular unit of measure, the formula as given here requires the angles to be provided in radians.

(X<sub>P</sub>, Y<sub>P</sub>, Z<sub>P</sub>) : Coordinates of the point about which the coordinate reference frame is rotated, given in the source Cartesian coordinate reference system.

M : The scale factor to be applied to the position vector in the source coordinate reference system in order to obtain the correct scale of the target coordinate reference system.  $M = (1 + dS \cdot 10^{-6})$ , where dS is the scale correction expressed in parts per million.

The Coordinate Frame Rotation method discussed in the previous section is a specific case of the Molodensky-Badekas transformation in which the evaluation point is the origin of the geocentric coordinate system, at which geocentric coordinate values are zero.

### **Example**

See section 2.4.4.1 below for an example.

### **Reversibility**

The Molodensky-Badekas transformation strictly speaking is not reversible, i.e. in principle the same parameter values cannot be used to execute the reverse transformation. This is because the evaluation point coordinates are in the forward direction source coordinate reference system and the rotations have been derived about this point. They should not be applied about the point having the same coordinate values in the target coordinate reference system, as is required for the reverse transformation. However, in practical application there are exceptions when applied to the approximation of small differences in the geometry of a set of points in two different coordinate reference systems. The typical vector difference in coordinate values is in the order of  $6 \cdot 10^1$  to  $6 \cdot 10^2$  metres, whereas the evaluation point on or near the surface of the earth is  $6.3 \cdot 10^6$  metres from the origin of the coordinate systems at the Earth's centre. This difference of four or five orders of magnitude allows the transformation in practice to be considered reversible. Note that in the reverse transformation, only the signs of the translation and rotation parameter values and scale are reversed; the coordinates of the evaluation point remain unchanged.

## **2.4.4 Transformations between Geographic Coordinate Reference Systems**

### **2.4.4.1 Transformations using geocentric methods**

Transformation of coordinates from one geographic coordinate reference system into another is often carried out as a concatenation of the following operations:

(geographic to geocentric) + (geocentric to geocentric) + (geocentric to geographic)

See section 4.4 of Guidance Note 7 part 1 for a fuller description of the concatenation technique.

The middle step of the concatenated transformation, from geocentric to geocentric, may be through any of the methods described in section 2.4.3 above: 3-parameter geocentric translations, 7-parameter Helmert or



Bursa-Wolf transformation or 10-parameter Molodensky-Badekas transformation. The geographic 3D to/from geocentric steps of the concatenated transformation are described in section 2.2.1 above. If involving geographic 2D coordinates, the techniques described in section 2.2.4 above (geographic 3D to/from 2D) may also be used as additional steps at each end of the concatenation.

The concatenated geodetic transformations are:

Geocentric Translations (geog2D domain), EPSG method code 9603

<u>Step #</u>	<u>Step Method Name</u>	<u>EPSG Method Code</u>	<u>GN7-2 section</u>
1	Geographic 2D to Geographic 3D	9659	2.2.4
2	Geographic 3D to Geocentric	9602	2.2.1
3	Geocentric Translations (geocentric domain)	1031	2.4.3.1
4	Geocentric to Geographic 3D	9602	2.2.1
5	Geographic 3D to Geographic 2D	9659	2.2.4

Geocentric Translations (geog3D domain), EPSG method code 1035

<u>Step #</u>	<u>Step Method Name</u>	<u>EPSG Method Code</u>	<u>GN7-2 section</u>
1	Geographic 3D to Geocentric	9602	2.2.1
2	Geocentric Translations (geocentric domain)	1031	2.4.3.1
3	Geocentric to Geographic 3D	9602	2.2.1

Position Vector transformation (geog2D domain), EPSG method code 9606

<u>Step #</u>	<u>Step Method Name</u>	<u>EPSG Method Code</u>	<u>GN7-2 section</u>
1	Geographic 2D to Geographic 3D	9659	2.2.4
2	Geographic 3D to Geocentric	9602	2.2.1
3	Position Vector transformation (geocentric domain)	1033	2.4.3.2.1
4	Geocentric to Geographic 3D	9602	2.2.1
5	Geographic 3D to Geographic 2D	9659	2.2.4

Position Vector transformation (geog3D domain), EPSG method code 1037

<u>Step #</u>	<u>Step Method Name</u>	<u>EPSG Method Code</u>	<u>GN7-2 section</u>
1	Geographic 3D to Geocentric	9602	2.2.1
2	Position Vector transformation (geocentric domain)	1033	2.4.3.2.1
3	Geocentric to Geographic 3D	9602	2.2.1

Coordinate Frame Rotation (geog2D domain), EPSG method code 9607

<u>Step #</u>	<u>Step Method Name</u>	<u>EPSG Method Code</u>	<u>GN7-2 section</u>
1	Geographic 2D to Geographic 3D	9659	2.2.4
2	Geographic 3D to Geocentric	9602	2.2.1
3	Coordinate Frame Rotation (geocentric domain)	1032	2.4.3.2.2
4	Geocentric to Geographic 3D	9602	2.2.1
5	Geographic 3D to Geographic 2D	9659	2.2.4

Coordinate Frame Rotation (geog3D domain), EPSG method code 1038

<u>Step #</u>	<u>Step Method Name</u>	<u>EPSG Method Code</u>	<u>GN7-2 section</u>
1	Geographic 3D to Geocentric	9602	2.2.1
2	Coordinate Frame Rotation (geocentric domain)	1032	2.4.3.2.2
3	Geocentric to Geographic 3D	9602	2.2.1

Molodensky-Badekas (geog2D domain), EPSG method code 9636

<u>Step #</u>	<u>Step Method Name</u>	<u>EPSG Method Code</u>	<u>GN7-2 section</u>
1	Geographic 2D to Geographic 3D	9659	2.2.4
2	Geographic 3D to Geocentric	9602	2.2.1
3	Molodensky-Badekas (geocentric domain)	1034	2.4.3.3
4	Geocentric to Geographic 3D	9602	2.2.1
5	Geographic 3D to Geographic 2D	9659	2.2.4

Molodensky-Badekas (geog3D domain), EPSG method code 1039

<u>Step #</u>	<u>Step Method Name</u>	<u>EPSG Method Code</u>	<u>GN7-2 section</u>
1	Geographic 3D to Geocentric	9602	2.2.1
2	Molodensky-Badekas (geocentric domain)	1034	2.4.3.3
3	Geocentric to Geographic 3D	9602	2.2.1

**Example**

Transformation from La Canoa to REGVEN between geographic 2D coordinate reference systems (EPSG dataset transformation code 1771).

The ten Molodensky-Badekas transformation parameter values for this transformation are:

dX	=	-270.933 m	
dY	=	+115.599 m	
dZ	=	-360.226 m	
R <sub>X</sub>	=	-5.266 sec	= -0.000025530288 radians
R <sub>Y</sub>	=	-1.238 sec	= -0.000006001993 radians
R <sub>Z</sub>	=	+2.381 sec	= +0.000011543414 radians
dS	=	-5.109 ppm	
Ordinate 1 of evaluation point	=	2464351.59 m	
Ordinate 2 of evaluation point	=	-5783466.61 m	
Ordinate 3 of evaluation point	=	974809.81 m	

Ellipsoid Parameters for the source and target coordinate reference systems are:

<u>CRS name</u>	<u>Ellipsoid name</u>	<u>Semi-major axis (a)</u>	<u>Inverse flattening (1/f)</u>
La Canoa	International 1924	6378388.0 metres	1/f = 297.0
REGVEN	WGS 84	6378137.0 metres	1/f = 298.2572236

Input point coordinate system: La Canoa (geographic 2D)

Latitude $\varphi_s$	=	9°35'00.386"N
Longitude $\lambda_s$	=	66°04'48.091"W

Step 1: Using the technique described in section 2.2.4 above, this is taken to be geographic 3D with an assumed ellipsoidal height  $h_s = 201.46$  m

Step 2: Using the geographic (3D) to geocentric conversion method given in section 2.2.1, these three coordinates convert to Cartesian geocentric coordinates:

X <sub>S</sub>	=	2 550 408.96 m
Y <sub>S</sub>	=	-5 749 912.26 m
Z <sub>S</sub>	=	1 054 891.11 m

Step 3: Application of the Molodensky-Badekas (geocentric domain) Transformation (section 2.4.3.3) results in:

$$\begin{aligned} X_T &= 2\,550\,138.46 \text{ m} \\ Y_T &= -5\,749\,799.87 \text{ m} \\ Z_T &= 1\,054\,530.82 \text{ m} \end{aligned}$$

on the REGVEN geocentric coordinate reference system (CRS code 4962)

Step 4: Using the reverse formulas for the geographic/geocentric conversion method given in section 2.2.1 on the REGVEN geographic 3D coordinate reference system (CRS code 4963) this converts into:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Latitude } \varphi_T &= 9^\circ 34' 49.001'' \text{N} \\ \text{Longitude } \lambda_T &= 66^\circ 04' 54.705'' \text{W} \\ \text{Ellipsoidal height } h_T &= 180.51 \text{ m} \end{aligned}$$

Step 5: Because the source coordinates were 2D, using method 2.2.4 the target system ellipsoidal height is dropped and the results treated as a geographic 2D coordinate reference system (CRS code 4189):

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Latitude } \varphi_T &= 9^\circ 34' 49.001'' \text{N} \\ \text{Longitude } \lambda_T &= 66^\circ 04' 54.705'' \text{W} \end{aligned}$$

#### **2.4.4.1.1 France geocentric interpolation**

(EPSG dataset coordinate operation method code 9655)

In France the national mapping agency (IGN) have promulgated a transformation between the classical geographic 2D coordinate reference system NTF and the modern 3-dimensional system RGF93 which uses geocentric translations interpolated from a grid file. The method is described in IGN document NTG-88. In summary:

- The grid file nodes are given in RGF93 geographic 2D coordinates.
- Within the grid file the sense of the parameter values is *from* NTF *to* RGF93.

For NTF to RGF93 transformations an iteration to obtain coordinates in the appropriate system for interpolation within the grid is required. The steps are:

- Convert NTF geographic 2D coordinates to geographic 3D by assuming a height and then to NTF geocentric coordinates.
- Transform NTF geocentric coordinates to approximate RGF93 coordinates using an average value for all France (EPSG dataset coordinate operation code 1651):

$$\begin{aligned} X_{NTF} &= X_{RGF93} - 168 \text{ m} \\ Y_{NTF} &= Y_{RGF93} - 60 \text{ m} \\ Z_{NTF} &= Z_{RGF93} + 320 \text{ m} \end{aligned}$$

- Convert the approximate RGF93 geocentric coordinates to approximate RGF93 geographic coordinates.
- Using the approximate RGF93 geographic coordinates, interpolate within the grid file to obtain the three geocentric translations (dX, dY, dZ) applicable at the point.
- Apply these geocentric translations to the NTF geocentric coordinates to obtain RGF93 geocentric coordinates:
- Transform RGF93 geocentric coordinates to NTF geocentric coordinates, taking account of the sense of the parameter values.

$$\begin{aligned} X_{RGF93} &= X_{NTF} + dX \\ Y_{RGF93} &= Y_{NTF} + dY \\ Z_{RGF93} &= Z_{NTF} + dZ \end{aligned}$$

- Convert RGF93 geocentric coordinates to RGF93 geographic 3D coordinates. Because the original input NTF coordinates were geographic 2D, the RGF93 ellipsoidal height is meaningless so it is dropped to give RGF93 geographic 3D coordinates.

For RGF93 to NTF transformations the steps are:

- Using the RGF93 geographic coordinates, interpolate within the grid file to obtain the three geocentric translations (dX, dY, dZ) applicable at the point.
- Convert RGF93 geographic coordinates to RGF93 geocentric coordinates.
- Transform RGF93 geocentric coordinates to NTF geocentric coordinates, taking into account the sense of the parameter values:

$$\begin{aligned} X_{NTF} &= X_{RGF93} + (-dX) \\ Y_{NTF} &= Y_{RGF93} + (-dY) \\ Z_{NTF} &= Z_{RGF93} + (-dZ) \end{aligned}$$

- Convert NTF geocentric coordinates to geographic 3D coordinates.
- Drop the ellipsoid height to give NTF geographic 2D coordinates.

#### **2.4.4.2 Abridged Molodensky transformation**

(EPSG dataset coordinate operation method code 9605)

As an alternative to the computation of the new latitude, longitude and ellipsoid height by concatenation of three operations (geographic 3D to geocentric + geocentric to geocentric + geocentric to geographic 3D), the changes in these coordinates may be derived directly as geographic coordinate offsets through formulas derived by Molodensky (EPSG dataset coordinate operation method code 9604, not detailed in this Guidance Note). Abridged versions of these formulas, which quite satisfactory for most practical purposes, are as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} \varphi_t &= \varphi_s + d\varphi \\ \lambda_t &= \lambda_s + d\lambda \\ h_t &= h_s + dh \end{aligned}$$

where

$$\begin{aligned} d\varphi &= (-dX \sin\varphi_s \cos\lambda_s - dY \sin\varphi_s \sin\lambda_s + dZ \cos\varphi_s + [a \, df + f \, da] \sin 2\varphi_s) / (\rho_s \sin 1'') \\ d\lambda &= (-dX \sin\lambda_s + dY \cos\lambda_s) / (\nu_s \cos\varphi_s \sin 1'') \\ dh &= dX \cos\varphi_s \cos\lambda_s + dY \cos\varphi_s \sin\lambda_s + dZ \sin\varphi_s + (a \, df + f \, da) \sin^2\varphi_s - da \end{aligned}$$

and where dX, dY and dZ are the geocentric translation parameters,  $\rho_s$  and  $\nu_s$  are the meridian and prime vertical radii of curvature at the given latitude  $\varphi_s$  on the first ellipsoid, da is the difference in the semi-major axes of the target and source ellipsoids and df is the difference in the flattening of the two ellipsoids:

$$\begin{aligned} \rho_s &= a_s (1 - e_s^2) / (1 - e_s^2 \sin^2\varphi_s)^{3/2} \\ \nu_s &= a_s / (1 - e_s^2 \sin^2\varphi_s)^{1/2} \\ da &= a_t - a_s \\ df &= f_t - f_s = 1/(1/f_t) - 1/(1/f_s). \end{aligned}$$

The formulas for d $\varphi$  and d $\lambda$  indicate changes in  $\varphi$  and  $\lambda$  in arc-seconds.

#### **Example:**

For a North Sea point with coordinates derived by GPS satellite in the WGS84 geographic coordinate reference system, with coordinates of:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{latitude } \varphi_s &= 53^\circ 48' 33.82'' \text{N}, \\ \text{longitude } \lambda_s &= 2^\circ 07' 46.38'' \text{E}, \\ \text{and ellipsoidal height } h_s &= 73.0 \text{m}, \end{aligned}$$

whose coordinates are required in terms of the ED50 geographic coordinate reference system which takes the International 1924 ellipsoid.

The three geocentric translations parameter values from WGS 84 to ED50 for this North Sea area are given as dX = +84.87m, dY = +96.49m, dZ = +116.95m.

Ellipsoid Parameters are:

WGS 84	a = 6378137.0 metres	1/f = 298.2572236
International 1924	a = 6378388.0 metres	1/f = 297.0

Then

$$\begin{aligned} da &= 6378388 - 6378137 = 251 \\ df &= 0.003367003 - 0.003352811 = 1.41927E-05 \end{aligned}$$

whence

$$\begin{aligned} d\varphi &= (-68.448-2.894+69.056+87.079)/30.917 &= & 2.743'' \\ d\lambda &= (-3.154+96.423)/18.299 &= & 5.097'' \\ dh &= 50.079+2.117+94.385+59.510-251.000 &= & -44.909 \text{ m} \end{aligned}$$

ED50 values on the International 1924 ellipsoid are then:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{latitude } \varphi_t &= 53^\circ 48' 36.563'' \text{N} \\ \text{longitude } \lambda_t &= 2^\circ 07' 51.477'' \text{E} \\ \text{and ellipsoidal height } h_t &= 28.091 \text{ m} \end{aligned}$$

Because ED50 is a geographic 2D coordinate reference system the height is dropped to give:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{latitude } \varphi_t &= 53^\circ 48' 36.56'' \text{N} \\ \text{longitude } \lambda_t &= 2^\circ 07' 51.48'' \text{E} \end{aligned}$$

For comparison, better values computed through the concatenation of the three operations (geographic to geocentric + geocentric to geocentric + geocentric to geographic) are:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{latitude } \varphi_t &= 53^\circ 48' 36.565'' \text{N} \\ \text{longitude } \lambda_t &= 2^\circ 07' 51.477'' \text{E} \\ \text{and ellipsoidal height } h_t &= 28.02 \text{ m} \end{aligned}$$

#### 2.4.4.3 Geographic Offsets

This is the simplest of transformations between two geographic coordinate reference systems, but is normally used only for purposes where low accuracy can be tolerated. It is generally used for transformations in two dimensions, latitude and longitude, where:

$$\begin{aligned} \varphi_t &= \varphi_s + d\varphi \\ \lambda_t &= \lambda_s + d\lambda \end{aligned}$$

(EPSG dataset coordinate operation method code 9619).

In very rare circumstances, a transformation in three dimensions additionally including ellipsoidal height may be encountered:

$$\begin{aligned} \varphi_t &= \varphi_s + d\varphi \\ \lambda_t &= \lambda_s + d\lambda \\ h_t &= h_s + dh \end{aligned}$$

(EPSG coordinate operation method code 9660)

This should not be confused with the Geographic2D with Height Offsets method used in Japan, where the height difference is between the ellipsoidal height component of a 3D geographic coordinate reference system and a gravity-related height system. This is discussed in section 2.4.5 below.

#### **Example:**

A position with coordinates of 38°08'36.565"N, 23°48'16.235"E referenced to the old Greek geographic 2D coordinate reference system (EPSG dataset CRS code 4120) is to be transformed to the newer GGRS87 system (EPSG dataset CRS code 4121). Transformation parameters from Greek to GGRS87 are:

$$\begin{aligned} d\varphi &= -5.86'' \\ d\lambda &= +0.28'' \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{array}{lclclcl} \text{Then} & \varphi_{\text{GGRS87}} & = & 38^{\circ}08'36.565''\text{N} & + & (-5.86'') & = & 38^{\circ}08'30.705''\text{N} \\ \text{and} & \lambda_{\text{GGRS87}} & = & 23^{\circ}48'16.235''\text{E} & + & 0.28'' & = & 23^{\circ}48'16.515''\text{E} \end{array}$$

For the reverse transformation for the same point,

$$\begin{array}{lclclcl} \varphi_{\text{GREEK}} & = & 38^{\circ}08'30.705''\text{N} & + & 5.86'' & = & 38^{\circ}08'36.565''\text{N} \\ \lambda_{\text{GREEK}} & = & 23^{\circ}48'16.515''\text{E} & + & (-0.28'') & = & 23^{\circ}48'16.235''\text{E} \end{array}$$

#### 2.4.4.4 **Geographic Offset by Interpolation of Gridded Data**

The relationship between some geographic 2D coordinate reference systems is available through gridded data sets of latitude and longitude offsets. This family of methods includes:

*NADCON* (EPSG dataset coordinate operation method code 9613) which is used by the US National Geodetic Survey for transformation between US systems;

*NTv2* (EPSG dataset coordinate operation method code 9615) which originated in the national mapping agency of Canada and was subsequently adopted in Australia, New Zealand and then several other countries; and

*OSTN* (EPSG dataset coordinate operation method code 9633) used in Great Britain.

The offsets at a point are derived by interpolation within the gridded data. In some methods, separate grid files are given for latitude and longitude offsets whilst in other methods the offsets for both latitude and longitude are given within a single grid file. The EPSG dataset differentiates methods by the format of the gridded data file(s). The grid file format is given in documentation available from the information source. Although the authors of some data sets suggest a particular interpolation method within the grid(s), generally the density of grid nodes should be such that any reasonable grid interpolation method will give the same offset value. Bi-linear interpolation is the most usual grid interpolation mechanism. The interpolated value of the offset  $A$  is then added to the source CRS coordinate value to give the coordinates in the target CRS.

#### **Reversibility**

The coordinate reference system for the coordinates of the grid nodes will be given either in the file itself or in accompanying documentation. This will normally be the source coordinate reference system for the forward transformation. Then in forward transformations the offset is obtained through straightforward interpolation of the grid file. But for the reverse transformation the first grid interpolation entry will be the value of the point in the second coordinate reference system, the offsets are interpolated and applied *with sign reversed*, and the result used in further iterations of interpolation and application of offset until the difference between results from successive iterations is insignificant.

## **2.4.5 Geoid and Height Correction Models**

### **2.4.5.1 Geographic3D to GravityRelatedHeight**

Although superficially involving a change of dimension from three to one, this transformation method is actually one-dimensional. The transformation applies an offset to the ellipsoidal height component of a geographic 3D coordinate reference system with the result being a gravity-related height in a vertical coordinate reference system. However the ellipsoidal height component of a geographic 3D coordinate reference system cannot exist without the horizontal components, i.e. it cannot exist as a one-dimensional coordinate reference system.

Geodetic science distinguishes between geoid-ellipsoid separation models and height correction models. Geoid separation models give the height difference between the ellipsoid and the geoid surfaces. Height correction models give height difference between ellipsoidal a particular vertical datum surface. Because a vertical datum is a realisation of the geoid and includes measurement errors and various constraints, a vertical datum surface will not exactly coincide with the geoid surface. The mathematics of the application of these models is identical and for the purposes of the EPSG dataset they are considered to be one method.

The correction value  $\zeta^6$  is interpolated from a grid of height differences and the interpolation requires the latitude and longitude components of the geographic 3D coordinate reference system as arguments.

If  $h$  is the ellipsoidal height (height of point above the ellipsoid, positive if up) in the geographic 3D CRS and  $H$  is the gravity-related height in a vertical CRS, then

$$H = h - \zeta$$

Note that unlike the general convention adopted for offsets described in 2.4.1, geoid separation and height correction models conventionally use the true mathematical convention for sign.

The EPSG dataset differentiates between the formats of the gridded height files and distinguishes separate coordinate operation methods for each file format. The coordinate operation method may also define the interpolation technique to be used. However the density of grid nodes is usually sufficient for any reasonable interpolation technique to be used, with bi-linear interpolation usually being applied.

### **Reversibility**

The reverse transformation, from gravity-related height in the vertical coordinate reference system to the ellipsoidal height component of the geographic3D coordinate reference system, requires that a horizontal position be associated with the gravity-related height. This is indeterminate unless a compound coordinate reference system is involved (see the Geographic3D to Geographic2D+GravityRelatedHeight method described below). Geographic3D to GravityRelatedHeight methods therefore are not reversible.

120120\_\_\_\_\_

<sup>6</sup> Geodetic science recognises several types of gravity-related height, differentiated by assumptions made about the gravitational field. A discussion of these types is beyond the scope of this document. In this document the symbol  $\zeta$  is used to indicate the correction to be applied to the ellipsoid height.

### **2.4.5.2 Geographic3D to Geographic2D+GravityRelatedHeight**

This method transforms coordinates between a geographic 3D coordinate reference system and a compound coordinate reference system consisting of separate geographic 2D and vertical coordinate reference systems. Separate operations are made between the horizontal and vertical components. In its simplest form it combines a Geographic 3D to 2D conversion and a Geographic3D to GravityRelatedHeight transformation (see sections 2.2.2 and 2.4.5.1 above). However, complexities arise (a) for the forward transformation if the source 3D and target 2D geographic coordinate reference systems are based on different geodetic datums, or (b) in the reverse transformation of height from compound to geographic 3D.

#### **Horizontal component**

If the horizontal component of the compound coordinate reference system and the geographic 3D coordinate reference system are based on the same geodetic datum, this operation is simply the Geographic 3D to 2D conversion described in section 2.2.2 above except that for the reverse case (2D to 3D) no assumption is required for the ellipsoidal height as it will come from the operation for the vertical part.

If the horizontal component of the compound coordinate reference system and the geographic 3D coordinate reference system are based on different geodetic datums then any of the geographic to geographic transformations discussed in section 2.4.4 above, including those using geocentric methods (sections 2.4.3 and 2.4.4.1), may be used.

#### **Vertical component**

The forward transformation from geographic 3D to vertical component of the compound system uses the Geographic3D to GravityRelatedHeight method described in section 2.4.5.1 above. Then:

$$H = h - \zeta$$

where, as before, **h** is the ellipsoidal height (height of point above the ellipsoid, positive if up) in the geographic 3D CRS, **H** is the gravity-related height in the vertical CRS part of the compound CRS and **ζ** is the correction from ellipsoidal height to gravity-related height from the gridded data.

The reverse transformation, from vertical component of the compound system to geographic 3D system, requires interpolation within the grid of height differences. However the latitude and longitude arguments for this interpolation must be in the geographic 3D coordinate reference system, as the nodes for the gridded data will be in this system. Therefore the reverse operation on the horizontal component of the compound system must be executed before the reverse vertical transformation can be made. Then:

$$h = H - \zeta$$

### **2.4.5.3 Geographic2D with Height Offsets**

(EPSG dataset coordinate operation method code 9618)

This method used in Japan is a simplified form of the general Geographic3D to Geographic2D+GravityRelatedHeight method described above. It combines the geographic 2D offset method described in section 2.4.4.3 above with an ellipsoidal height to gravity-related height value **A** applied as a vertical offset.

$$\begin{aligned}\varphi_{\text{WGS84}} &= \varphi_{\text{Tokyo}} + d\varphi \\ \lambda_{\text{WGS84}} &= \lambda_{\text{Tokyo}} + d\lambda \\ h_{\text{WGS84}} &= H_{\text{JSLD}} + A\end{aligned}$$

©OGP, 1995-2009.

*(OGP contact details, disclaimer and copyright notice to be inserted here).*